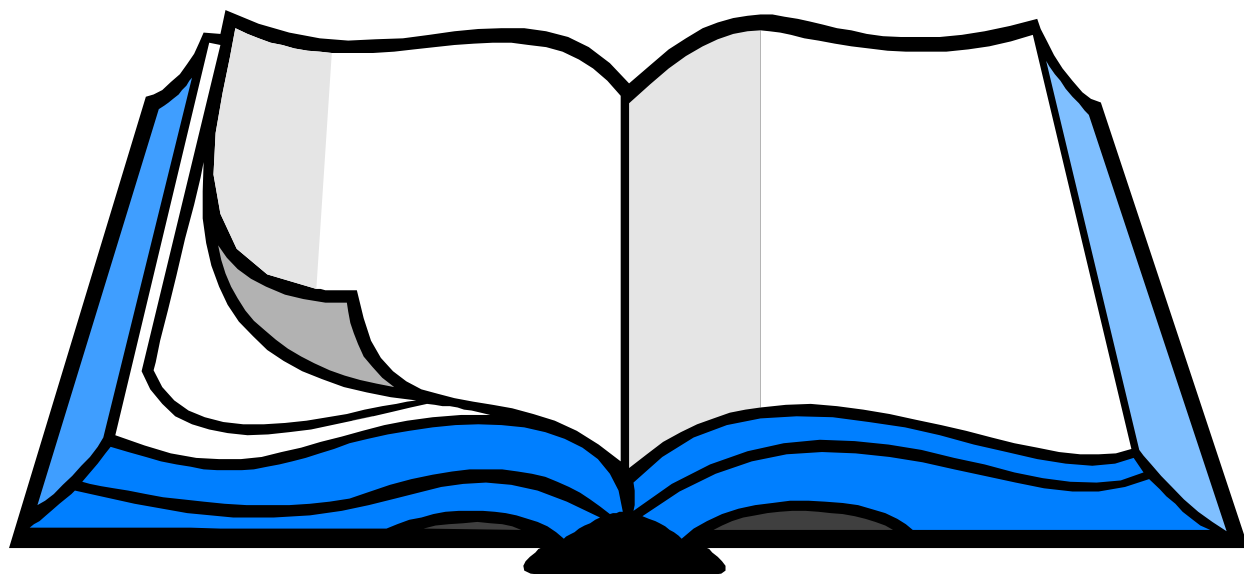


A. Z. TSISYK

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК



Минск 2018

МИНИСТЕРСТВО ЗДРАВООХРАНЕНИЯ РЕСПУБЛИКИ БЕЛАРУСЬ
БЕЛОРУССКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ МЕДИЦИНСКИЙ
УНИВЕРСИТЕТ
КАФЕДРА ЛАТИНСКОГО ЯЗЫКА

А.З. ЦИСЫК

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

Минск 2018

УДК 807 (811.124) (075.8)

ББК 81.2. Лат. – 923

Рецензенты: кафедра иностранных языков Гродненского государственного медицинского университета (заведующий кафедрой Разводовская Я.В.); Лин С.А., доцент кафедры иностранных языков Гомельского государственного медицинского университета.

Цисык А.З.

Ц 73 The Latin Language / Латинский язык: учеб.-метод. пособие / А. З. Цисык.
– Мн.: БГМУ, 2018. – 340 с.

ISBN 985-496-063-3

Учебное пособие предназначено для иностранных студентов лечебного, педиатрического и других факультетов медицинских вузов, изучающих дисциплину «Латинский язык» на английском языке.

This manual is meant for the foreign students studying in English the subject «The Latin Language» at Medical or other Faculties of Medical Universities

УДК 807(811.124) (075.8)

ББК 81.2.Лат. – 923

ISBN 985-496-063-3

© Цисык А.З., 2018

PREFACE

This manual is meant for English-speaking students of medical universities of the Republic of Belarus. Its structure corresponds to the syllabus presented in the State Educational Standard Plan for the subject “The Latin Language” taught in the medical universities. The manual has been composed in accordance with generally accepted patterns expressed in well-known manuals and textbooks of Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology.

The manual is divided into four parts – phonetics, the anatomical part with the main grammar rules, the pharmaceutical part and the clinical one.

Every real lesson, as it is generally known, has a uniform structure: checking the home task (orally and in writing), some explanation of a new topic, students’ work with exercises. The manual contains all necessary components for this work – grammar and terminological material, as well as exercises. In the latter, words are given in alphabetical order, and every lesson is provided with Latin-English and English-Latin glossaries. Such a distribution of educational material should help students in their work with exercises.

According to high school norms of studying linguistic subjects, students are to learn 30 – 40 new words at every lesson, although this word memorizing can be managed naturally only due to a strenuous efforts to do the homework. But then, this work is constantly facilitated by lexical affinity of equivalent words in Latin and English.

The main attention is paid to the anatomical and clinical terms, as namely these terms are and will be mainly needed of all wanted in daily medical practice of foreign students. That is why the pharmaceutical part of the manual is presented

quite concisely. As to clinical terms, on the basis of well-known English medical dictionaries we sought to give the scientific definition of each terminological unit. Such an introduction into professional terminology judging by the students' reaction has always been of great interest to them.

The subject "Medical Latin" is mastered and controlled chiefly in written form. So both proper spelling and grammar arrangement are of great value as spoken Latin is very simple. That's why control tests at every lesson as well as summing up are performed only in written form.

The students should bear in mind, that only systematic work on the topic and vocabulary of every lesson on their own can result in success.

INTRODUCTION TO THE SUBJECT

The subject you are going to study is the Latin Language. To some point, this name is relative, because nowadays there are no people speaking Latin. From the school course of world history you can remember, that many centuries ago, where nowadays Italy is, there was the Roman Empire. The Roman state which included many lands and people existed till 464 A.D. And initially, Rome was a small town, founded by an Italian tribe in 753 B.C. and Latin was its native language. Gradually, century after century, Rome became the most powerful state of the Mediterranean and Latin was widespread and acknowledged.

An event of tremendous historical importance for both Rome and the future of European culture was the Roman conquest of Greece, the motherland of European culture and science. The Greek physician Hippocrates is namely considered to be the founder of European scientific medicine. Hippocrates and other Greek physicians made a great contribution into the development of medicine, that's why Greek medicine was extremely popular and prestigious among the population of the

Mediterranean area. For this reason, Greek medical terms were borrowed into Latin and came into use in different countries. So originally the European medical terminology was formed on the basis of Greek and Latin words.

In the new history of Europe, beginning with the Roman state's collapse, the Latin language was used for 1000 years as the language of state establishments, Catholic religion, education and science, especially at universities founded in the 12-th century. Every university would have a medical faculty. Diplomas and theses as well as the process of education itself were in Latin. As to medicine, Latin became the international professional language of physicians. Medical terms rooting from Latin and Greek are presented in any European language as borrowings. What's more, there exist lists of biological and medical terms, forming the so-called Nomenclatures, approved at the International Congresses of scientists – anatomical, histological, microbiological etc. Latin terms of those nomenclatures are used in education and scientific literature. That's why future doctors must study fundamentals of international medical terminology, based on Latin grammar and Latin and Greek word building elements (roots, stems and affixes).

Among modern European languages English, and, particularly, medical English, contains a great number of Latin and latinized Greek words. It becomes evident when comparing medical glossaries of Latin and English. To prove this compare some medical terms in Latin and English.

Latin anatomical terms	English equivalents
abdomen	abdomen
alaris	alar
canalis	canal
cardiacus	cardiac
cavitas	cavity
lobus	lobe
longus	long
tonsilla	tonsil

vomer	vomer
-------	-------

Latin pharmaceutical terms	English equivalents
acidum	acid
Acidum aceticum	acetic acid
aether	ether
cortex	cortex
dilutus	diluted
herba	herb
Mentha	mint
pilula	pill
tinctura	tincture

Latin clinical terms	English equivalents	Meaning
adenitis	adenitis	inflammation of gland
bradyphagia	bradyphagia	slowing of swallowing
cancerophobia	cancerophobia	fear of cancer
cholecystogramma	cholecystogram	results of gallbladder X-ray examination
haematuria	hematuria	blood in the urine
lipuria	lipuria	lipid excretion by urine
otogenus	otogenic	developing from the ear
tachycardia	tachycardia	abnormally fast heart rate
trichalgia	trichalgia	feeling of pain in the hair

As we see, in clinical terminology using Latin terms is particularly preferable, because one Latin word can change the whole group of English words, expressing some pathological phenomenon.

The proximity of medical terms in Latin and English can be explained very simply: it is well known, that English medical terminology developed from Medieval Latin terminology, which had absorbed ancient Latin and Greek medical lexical units. Both Latin and ancient Greek are an inexhaustible source for a new

term building, and this process keeps on going. Everybody striving to become a doctor must master Latin and fundamentals of international medical Terminology.

The course of Latin at the Medical University you are going to study consists of 3 main parts, which correspond to the main groups of medical terminology: anatomical (and partly histological), pharmaceutical and clinical ones. This material is divided into 2 academic terms (semesters); each lesson is once a week. The first term is devoted to learning phonetic and main grammar rules of Latin anatomical terminology. During the second term the students get acquainted with the fundamentals of pharmaceutical and clinical terminology. Each new lesson includes your teacher's explanation of the topic of the lesson, but the main bulk of work for you is your home task. A specific feature of studying during both terms is written control of checking home task preparation at every lesson. Besides this regular test control, 3 written tests (for 45 and 90 minutes) are provided. The purpose of the first one is to control the knowledge of about 50 % of the course material, and that of the second one – mastering the entire material of each part of the course. There exist uniform (for all groups and teachers) rules of the control assessment and you will be acquainted with them. So, at every lesson, you will first work orally, checking the home task with your teacher, and then your knowledge will be controlled in written form (while books and notebooks are closed). The principal way to this knowledge is your own persistent work with your textbook memorizing Latin words and rules of its grammar. And, without doubt, every student can succeed in learning Latin and fundamentals of medical terminology, if his or her efforts are steady and diligent.

Part I. PHONETIC RULES OF PRONUNCIATION

Lesson 1

THE LATIN ALPHABET. THE PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS, CONSONANTS AND LETTER COMBINATIONS

§ 1. Latin alphabet

The Latin alphabet includes 25 letters.

Letters	Names	Latin Pronunciation	Latin examples and their transcription	English equivalents
A a	a [ʌ]	[a]	vas [vʌs]	vessel
B b	be [be]	[b]	bulbus [bú:lbus]	bulb
C c	tse [tse]	[ts] [k]	coccyx [kó:ktsiks]	coccyx, coccygeal bone
D d	de [de]	[d]	dens [dens]	tooth
E e	e [e]	[e]	vertebra [vé:rtebrʌ]	vertebra
F f	ef [ef]	[f]	frontalis [fronta:lis]	frontal
G g	ge [ge]	[g]	genu [gé:nu]	knee
H h	ha [hʌ]	[h] like English heart, here	hepar [hé:pʌr]	liver
I i	i [i]	[i]	incisura	incisure

			[incizú:rΛ]	
J j	yot [yot]	[j] like English yes, you	jugularis [yuguláris]	jugular
K k	ka [kΛ]	[k]	skeleton [ské:leton]	skeleton
L l	el [el]	l [as in English life, love]	cellula [tsé:llulΛ]	cell
M m	em [em]	[m]	mors [mors]	death
N n	en [en]	[n]	nodus [nó:dus]	node
O o	o [o]	[o]	coronarius [coronárius]	coronary
P p	pe [pe]	[p]	palpebra [pálpebrΛ]	eyelid
Q q	ku [ku]	[kv] together with vowel u and vowel a, e, i, o, u after u	Quercus [kvé:rkus] quartus [kvá:rtus]	oak fourth
R r	er [er]	[r]	renalis [rená:lis]	renal
S s	es [es]	[s] [z]	sinus [sí:nus] incisura [intsizú:rΛ]	sinus, hollow incisure
T t	te [te]	[t] [ts]	tibia [tí:biΛ] articulatio [artikulá:tsio]	tibia, shine- bone articulation, joint
U u	u [u]	u	succus [sú:kkus]	juice
V v	ve [ve]	v	valva [vá:lvΛ]	valve
X x	iks [iks]	ks	dexter [dé:kster]	right, right- hand
Y y	ipsilon [ípsilon]	i	gyrus [gí:rus]	gyrus, convolution
Z z	zeta [zétΛ]	z	zygomatus	zygomatic

			[zigomátikus]	
--	--	--	---------------	--

The last two letters, borrowed by Romans from Greek alphabet, are used, as a rule, in the words of Greek origin.

§ 2. Division of Latin sounds

Six letters of the alphabet (a, e, i, o, u, y) correspond to vowels and nineteen (b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z) denote consonants.

§ 3. Pronunciation of vowels

Vowels in Latin, except “y”, sound practically the same, as the sounds of their names in the alphabet (see above). So, the letter “a” sounds [a], the letter e – sounds [e] and so on. One may add, that the stressed vowel corresponds in pronuntiation to a long one in English, compare:

cavitas [cá:vitʌs] – cavity

apertura [ʌpertú:rʌ] – aperture, opening

venosus [venó:zus] – venous

tonsilla [tonsí:llʌ] – tonsil

The letter “y” (ípsilon) sounds as the Latin letter “i” (that’s why the Frenchmen call y “igrek”, i.e. “the Greek “i”):

tympanum [tí:mpanum] – drum

All the above given examples also indicate, that Latin vowels don’t practically change their sound quality in different syllables. But the vowel “i” placed before the vowels “a”, “e”, “o”, “u” when making a common syllable with them, changes its sound characteristics: now it sounds similar to the English vowel “y” in the *yard*, *yours*, *yourself*, *youthful*, let’s compare:

maialis [mʌjá:lis] – referring to May

ieiunum [jejú:num] – jejunum

major [má:jor] – greater

As in such cases the letter “i” sounds different compared to the vowel “i”, the scientists in the XVI century decided to introduce a new letter j into the Latin alphabet, so as to substitute the vowel “i”: majalis, jejunum, major and so on. It is common to use the letter “j” in medical and biological terms. Leus, however, note that in the terms of the Greek origin the vowel “i” never makes a syllable with the subsequent vowels “a”, “e”, “o”, “u” and therefore the letter j cannot be used:

iater [iá:ter] physician, commonly geriater, paediatr, psychiatr, phthisiatr and so on – these terms will be discussed in the clinical part of our course. We can also mention the noun Iodum [ió:dum] – iodine (Latin names of chemical elements are to be written with capital letters).

§ 4. Pronunciation of two vowel combination

Two vowels following each other can form the so-called diphthong that is pronounced as a combination of two vowels pronounced in one syllable.

So **au** [au] is pronounced as in the English words *down, sound, south, compound* and so on:

auris [áuris] **ear**, *caudalis* [kaudá:lis] **caudal**, *trauma* [tráuma] **injury, wound**.

Eu [eu] is pronounced as closed combined [e] and [u]. Vowel “u” in this combination is pronounced as a sound similar to [v]. We have no analogue in English of such a pronunciation, so it must be learnt by the spelling memorizing:

Eucalyptus [eukalí:ptus] **eucalyptus**

pneumonia [pneumoní:Λ] **pneumonia**

However, you should pay attention to the letter combination “eu” at the end of words, where it doesn’t make a diphthong and each vowel is pronounced separately:

sigmoideus [sigmoí:deus] *sigmoid*

corpus luteum [kó:rpus lú:teum] corpus luteum (yellow body)

Two vowels can also form a digraph, which sounds like the Latin vowel “e”:

ae – [e] costae [kó:ste] *ribs*

oe – [e] oedema [edé:mΛ] *swelling*

If each vowel in such digraphs is to be pronounced separately, two dots are placed over the letter e:

aër [á:er] *air*, Aloë (name of a medical plant) [á:loe] *aloe*.

§ 5. Pronunciation of consonants

Consonants **b, d, f, h, k, m, n, p, q, s, t, v, x** are similar in pronouncing to English. The difference is that consonants **p, t, k** are not aspirated, as in English. Pronunciation of the rest consonants is to be explained.

The letter **Cc** before the vowels “e”, “i”, “y” and digraphs **ae, oe** is pronounced as [ts], but before the vowels “a”, “o”, “u” and consonants (except **h**) is pronounced as [k]:

cervicalis [tserviká:lis] *cervical*

caecum [tsé:kum] *caecum*

coccyx [kó:ktsiks] *coccyx, cockerel bone*

The letter **Gg** is always pronounced like [g] in English *get, glass, disguise*:

gaster [gá:ster] *stomach*

genu [gé:nu] *knee*

vagina [vΛgí:nΛ] *vagina*

The letter **Hh** is pronounced approximately as h in English:

homo [hó:mo] *man*

hyoideus [hioí:deus] *sublingual*

The letter **Ll** is pronounced in some way softer than in English and is palatalized both before vowels and consonants (as in the pronunciation of such English words as **look** and **live**):

albus [á:lbus] *white*
cellula [tsé:llulΛ] *cell*
palatinus [pΛlΛtínus] *palatine*
pyloricus [piló:rikus] *pyloric*

The letter **Rr** in Latin is pronounced always clearly and distinctly not as the English **Rr** [a:]

dexter [dé:xter] *right*
posterior [posté:rior] *back*
renalis [rená:lis] *renal*

The letter **Ss** between two vowels is pronounced like [z], in other cases – as [s]:

basis [bá:zis] – base
sinus [sí:nus] – sinus, hollow

The letter **Tt** is commonly pronounced as [t] without aspiration: tinctura [tinktú:rΛ] – tincture. But in such a letter combination, where **i** follows **t** plus some other vowel, **t** is pronounced as [ts]:

articulatio [artikulá:tsio] *joint*
protuberantia [protuberá:ntsia] *protuberance*

There is, however, an exception from this last rule: if before the combination **ti** + vowel the consonants “**s**” or “**x**” are placed, then the pronunciation of **ti** is [ti]:

digestio [digé:stio] *digestion*
ostium [ó:stium] *orifice*

The letter **Zz** is pronounced as [z]:

zona [zó:nΛ] *zone*

horizontalis [horizontá:lis] *horizontal*

But in two cases we pronounce this letter as [ts]: influenza [influé:ntsΛ] – grippus, influenza and Zincum [tsí:nkum] *zink*.

§ 6. Pronunciation of consonant combinations

Two consonants can form a digraph, which is pronounced as a consonant:

ch is pronounced as [kh]:

chorda [khó:rdΛ] *cord*;

charta [khá:rtΛ] *paper*

ph is pronounced as [f]:

lymphaticus [limfá:ticus] *lymphatic*

pharynx [fa:rinks] *pharynx*

rh is pronounced as [r]:

rhinorrhagia [rinoragí:a] – rhinorrhagia (nasal bleeding)

rhomboideus [romboí□:deus] – rhomboid

th is pronounced as [t]:

thorax [tó:raks] – chest

labyrinthus [lΛbirí:ntus] – labyrinth

The combination of three consonants **sch** is pronounced as [skh]:

schema [skhé:mΛ] – scheme

ischiadicus [iskhiá:dikus] – sciatic

§ 7. Pronunciation of some letter combinations

The letter combination **ngu** is pronounced as [ngv], if the vowel **u** is followed by one of the vowels a, e, i, u:

lingua [lí:ngvΛ] *tongue, language*

unguentum [ungvé:ntum] *ointment*

unguis [ú:ngvis] *nail*

But if a consonant follows “**u**”, then **ngu** is pronounced as [ngu]:

angulus [á:ngulus] *angle*

lingula [lí:ngulΛ] *lingula, a little tongue.*

The letter combination **qu** with the following vowel (**a, e, i, o, u**) is pronounced as [kv] with a subsequent vowel:

squamosus [skvamó:zus] *squamosal*

aqueductus [akvedú:tus] *aqueduct*

Quercus [kvé:rkus] *oak*

§ 8. Exercises

1. *Read the following words paying special attention to the vowel pronunciation:*

forámen (opening), ligaméntum (ligament), dúctus (duct), interlobuláris (interlobular), longitudinális (longitudinal), massetéricus (masticatory, chewing), pylóricus (pyloric), synoviális (synovial), tympánicus (tympanic), siníster (left), zygomáticus (zygomatic).

2. *Read the following words paying special attention to the pronunciation of the letter c:*

cáput (head), cervicális (cervical), cérebrum (brain), cútis (skin), Ácidum acéticum (acetic acid), síccus (dry), fácies (face, surface), coccygéus (coccygeal), coerúleus (blue), caécum (caecum), búccae (cheeks), carcinóma (cancer), sáccus lacrimális (lacrimal sac)

3. *Read the following words paying special attention to the pronunciation of the letters g and q:*

nérvus hypoglóssus (hypoglossal nerve), gánglion pterygopalatínium (pterygopalatine ganglion), rámi gingiváles (gingival branches), gánglion geniculátum (geniculate ganglion), gýrus anguláris (angular gyrus), húnor aquósus

(aqueous humor), aquedúctus vestibuli (vestibular aqueduct), cósta quinta (fifth rib), márgo squamósus (squamosal border)

4. *Read correctly the following words, paying special attention to the consonants j, s and t:*

ála májor (major wing), flexúra duodenojejúnalis (duodenojejunal flexure), júga alveolária (alveolar yokes), articulátio compósita (complex joint), óstium atrioventriculáre dextrum (right atrioventricular orifice), incisúra juguláris (jugular notch), segméntum basále antérius (anterior basal segment), básiis óssis sácri (base of sacrum), míxtio pro potióne (mixture for drinking).

5. *Read correctly the following words paying attention to combinations of vowels:*

cóstae spúriae (false ribs), forámen caécum línguae (caecum foramen of tongue), Óleum Eucalýpti (eucalyptus oil), oedéma larýngis (edema of larynx), nérvus auriculáris (auricular nerve), aponeurósis línguae (lingual aponeurosis), cèllulae haematopoëticae (hematogenic cells), glándulae oesophagáe (oesophageal glands), pneumonía mígrans (migratory pneumonia).

6. *Read attentively the following words with vowel and consonant combinations:*

nérvus ischiádicus (sciatic nerve), Strophanthínium (strophanthin), Synthomycínium (synthomycin), fébris haemorrhágica (hemorrhagic fever), ráphe pharýngis (pharyngeal raphe), ásthma bronchiále (bronchial asthma), vértebrae thorácicae (thoracic vertebrae), unguéntum ophthálmicum (ophthalmic ointment), labyrínthus ethmoidális (ethmoidal labyrinth), Methylénium coerúleum (blue methylen), rhizóma Glycyrrhízae (rhizome of licorice), Schizándra chinénsis (chinense magnolia vine), sectiões hypothálami (sections of hypothalamus), dúctus cholédochus (common bile duct), trúncus brachiocephálicus (brachiocephalic trunk), distántia trochantérica (trochanteric distance), hemisphérium cerebèlli

(hemisphere of cerebellum), tubérculum pharyngéum (pharyngeal tubercle), véna saphéna (saphenous vein), cirrhósis hépatis (biliary cirrhosis), typhus abdominális (abdominal typhus), nephrolithíasis chrónica (chronic nephrolithiasis), foétor ex óre seu halitósis (fetid or offensive breath or halitosis)

Lesson 2

ACCENT RULES

§ 9. Accent in the words consisting of two syllables.

If a word consists of two syllable, there is always only one stress: the first syllable is stressed:

cós-ta, lá-rynx, nér-vus

§ 10. Accent in polysyllabic words.

Length and brevity of the second end syllable

In polysyllabic words consisting of three and more syllables, the second or third syllables from the end of the word can be stressed. The stress depends on the length or brevity of the second word end syllable: if it is long, it is stressed, if it is short, it cannot be stressed and then the third word end syllable is stressed.

The length and brevity of the second syllable and particularly in textbooks are usually marked by special signs: a short line is placed over the vowel if it is long, and a little arch – if it is short, compare:

ā – ǎ, ē – ě, ī – ě, ō – ǒ, ū – ů, ŷ – ǎ.

So, if we find such words as forāmen, incisūra, hepatītis etc. in the dictionary, we can instantly determine, that such words have an accent on the second syllable from the end.

If in the dictionary we see such words as lamīna, encephālon, thoracīcus etc., we understand that the third syllable from the end must be stressed: lámīna, encéphalon, thorácicus.

Now, we should ask a crucial question: do we have to consult the dictionary about the quality of the second end syllable in every case or not? Fortunately, there exist some rules helping us to determine at once the length or brevity of the second end syllable, or more simply, of the second end vowel. First of all, there are suffixes containing vowels which are long or short by nature. Such suffixes called accordingly “long” or “short” can give us guidance about the length or brevity of the second end vowel.

§ 11. Long suffixes

Before listing the suffixes, one must notice that part of these suffixes is always long or short in all kinds of terminology – anatomical, pharmaceutical, clinical. As we are going to begin with anatomical terminology and continue studying it during the first semester, it would be proper to begin with the suffixes in anatomical terms.

Suffixes	Examples	English equivalents	Exceptions and their translation
-āl-	dentālis horizontālis	dental horizontal	encephālon (brain)
-ār-	articulāris mandibulāris	auricular mandibular	–
-āt-	caudātus meātus	caudate passage	prostāta (prostate)
-īn-	palatīnus vagīna	palatine vagina, sheath	lamīna (lamine), femīna women), retīna (retina), dens

Suffixes	Examples	English equivalents	Exceptions and their translation
			serotinus (wisdom tooth), nervus trigeminus (trigeminal nerve), terminus (term)
-īv-	gingīva dens incisīvus	gingiva, gum incisor, tooth	—
-ōs-	aponeurōsis petrōsus	aponeurosis stony	—
-ūr-	incisūra sutūra	incisure, slit or notch suture, line of junction	—

§ 12. Short suffixes

Suffixes	Examples	English equivalents	Exceptions
-iāc-	cardiācus coeliācus	cardiac coeliac	—
-īc-	gastrīcus tunīca	gastric tunic, coat	vesīca (bladder)
-ōl-	alveōlus foveōla	alveolus, satchet (of tooth) foveola	—
-ūl-	clavicūla mandibūla	clavicle mandible	—

§ 13. Suffixes with similar quality of vowel in all parts of medical terminology

As mentioned above, some suffixes can always be long or short in all parts of medical terminology, compare:

Suffix	Anatomical terms	Pharmaceutical terms	Clinical terms
-āt-	muscūlus levātor (levator muscle)	Aqua destillāta (distilled water)	Caries exacerbāta (exacerbated caries)
-ōs-	aponeurōsis (aponeurosis)	spirituōsus (spirituous)	erythrocytōsis (erythrocytosis, increased account of red blood cells in the blood)
-ūr-	junctūra (junction, junction)	tinctūra (tincture)	fractura (fracture)
-ŭl-	angŭlus (angle)	Betŭla (birch)	furuncŭlus (furuncle, boil)

§ 14. The way of accent determination when the second end vowel is not a part of a long or a short suffix

In many words the second vowel from the word end is placed before a consonant, but this vowel is not a part of a common long or short suffix. In such cases we can determine its length or brevity controlling those peculiarities of the given word in the textbook vocabulary, compare:

forāmen (opening), orbīta (eye socket), skelēton (skeleton), suprēmus (highest), tuberositas (tuberosity), urēter (ureter) and so on.

§ 15. Some rules of syllable length determination

In some cases we can determine the syllable length or brevity with the help of certain rules.

1. The syllable is long, when its vowel is placed before two or more consonants:

ligame^ontum (ligament)

maxi^olla (maxilla, upper jaw)

sini^oster (left).

But, when the vowel is short by nature (it is shown in the dictionary) and it is placed before two consonants, first of which being **b, c, d, g, p, t** and the second is **l** or **r**, this short vowel is pronounced short:

vértēbra (vertebra), cérēbrum (cerebrum), os tríquētrum (triquetrum bone), múltíplex (multiple). And when this vowel is long by nature, our rule is valid:

cicātrix (cicatrix, scar), psychiātri (psychiatrists), salūbris (curative).

2. The syllable is long, when it includes the diphthongs **au, eu** or **ae, oe**: amoēba (ameba), diaēta (diet), Althaēa (althea).

3. The syllable is long when its vowel is placed before the consonants **x** or **z**: reflēxus (reflex), Orȳza (rise).

§ 16. The rules of syllable brevity

1. The syllable is short when its vowel is placed before another vowel:

línēa (line), supérĭor (higher, upper)

córnŭa (horns), Alumínĭum (aluminium)

There are, however, two points of exceptions from this rule:

1) in some words of Greek origin the last but one vowel was formed from the diphthong **ae**, that's why it keeps the length of the syllable:

coccygaeus → coccygēus

peritonaenum → peritonēum

You have to memorize these exceptions:

perinēum (perineum, fork) peritonēum (peritoneum), trachēa (trachea), anconēus (anconeus muscle), coccygēus (coccygeal), esophagēus (esophageal), glutēus (gluteal), laryngēus (laryngeal), meningēus (meningeal), peronēus (peroneal, fibular), pharyngēus (pharyngeal).

2) in clinical terms with the ending **-ia** their vowel **i** and the syllable with it are stressed:

dyskinesía (dyskinesia, disturbance of movement), otoscopía (otoscopy, internal examination of the ear).

Some peculiarities of this exception will be discussed in the clinical part of our course.

2. The syllable is short when its vowel is placed before the digraphs ch, ph, rh, th:

ductus cholédōchus (bile duct)

nephrólithus (renal calculus)

§ 17. Exercises

1. *Determine the stress syllable paying attention to the long and short suffixes:*

incisūra ethmoidālis (ethmoidal notch), tuberculūm jugulāre (jugular tubercle), lingūla sphenoidālis (sphenoidal lingula), semicanālis tubae auditīvae (canal for auditory tube), meātus acustīcus externus (external acoustic meatus), lamīna perpendiculāris (perpendicular plate), facies palatīna (palatine surface), vesīca biliāris (gallbladder), glandūlae endocrīnae (endocrine glands), junctūrae cingūli pelvīci (joints of pelvic girdle), urethra masculīna (male urethra), spina scapūlae (spine of scapula), intestīnum tenue (small intestine), alveolus dentālis (tooth socket), tunīca mucōsa linguae (mucous membrane of tongue), arcus dentālis mandibulāris (mandibular dental arcade), trigōnum submandibulāre (submandibular triangle)

2. *Write down and determine the stressed syllable paying attention to the natural length or brevity of the last but one vowel:*

tubercŭlum anterius (anterior tubercle), incisŭrae costales (costal slits), vertebra thoracica (thoracic vertebra), ductus choledochus (bile duct), foramen apicis radicis dentis (apical foramen of the root of the tooth), vesica urinaria (urinary bladder), Oleum Ricini (castor oil), Sirupus Rubi idaei (raspberry syrup), Solutio lodi spirituosa (iodine spirituous solution), eczema allergicum (allergic eczema), stomatitis chronica (chronic stomatitis), systema conducens cordis (conducting system of heart), apertura thoracis inferior (lower opening of chest), musculus levator fornix (muscle raising fornix), Tinctura Valeriana (tincture of valerian), facies anterior partis petrosae (anterior surface of petrous part), canales palatini minores (lesser palatine canals), systema lymphoideum (lymphoid system)

3. Write down the terms, put the signs of length or brevity over the last but one syllable (using if necessary vocabularies of this manual) and determine in writing the accent:

ligamentum popliteum obliquum (oblique popliteal ligament), cartilago thyreoidea (thyroid cartilage), bifurcatio tracheae (bifurcation of trachea), musculus anconeus (anconeus muscle), atrium meatus medii (atrium of middle meatus), Extractum Crataegi fluidum (liquid extract of hawthorn), paralysis congenita (congenital paralysis), syndromum immunodeficientiae acquisitae (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome), tuberositas pterygoidea (pterygoid tuberosity), anaemia myelogenae (myelogenous anemia), arteria circumflexa humeri anterior (anterior circumflex humeral artery), organum vasculosum laminae terminalis (vascular organ of lamina terminalis), fissura longitudinalis cerebri (longitudinal cerebral fissure), fasciculus uncinatus cerebelli (uncinate fasciculus of cerebellum), kyphosis thoracica (thoracic kyphosis), linea glutea inferior (inferior gluteal line), syndesmoses cranii (cranial syndesmoses), articulatio sacrococcygea (sacrococcygeal joint), segmentum anterius mediale (anterior medial segment), infundibulum vesicae felleae (infundibulum of gallbladder), muscoli palati mollis et

faucium (muscles of soft palate and fauces), papilla duodēni major (major duodenal papilla), ostium atrioventriculare sinistrum (left atrioventricular orifice), membrāna bronchopericardiaca (bronchopericardial membrane), arteria pharyngea ascendens (ascending pharyngeal artery), tuberositas deltoidea (deltoid tuberosity)

Part II. ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

Lesson 3

THE STRUCTURE OF LATIN ANATOMICAL TERMS. NOUN AND ITS GRAMMAR CATEGORIES

§ 18. The Latin terminology in anatomy and its structure.

Anatomical terminology naming all parts of the human body is the base of medical terminology. For more than a century the so-called Terminologia Anatomica – The International Anatomical Terminology in Latin which is accepted by anatomists of the world has existed. Latin is also the base for creating equivalent terms in other languages. The last edition of this International Anatomic Terminology appeared in 1998 and it contains 7428 terms.

The anatomical term is a word or several words used to denote a definite unit or structure of the human body. So Latin anatomical terms may consist of one, two, three, four and more words – up to 8.

One-word terms consist of one noun in singular or plural:

cor (heart), fauces (fauces)

Two-word terms may consist of:

1. A noun with an adjective in singular or plural:

crista renālis (renal crest); nodi faciāles (facial nodes)

2. Two nouns in singular or plural:

corpus vertēbrae (body of vertebra); terminatiōnes nervōrum (nerve terminals)

Three-word terms may consist of:

1. Three nouns:

ala cristae galli (wing of cock's crest);

lamīna arcus vertēbrae (lamina of vertebral arch)

2. One noun plus two adjectives:

glandūlae salivariae minōres (minor salivary glands);

plexus cervicālis posterior (posterior cervical plexus)

3. Two nouns plus one adjective:

arcus anterior atlantis (anterior arch of atlas);

tuberositas ossis sacri (sacral tuberosity)

In multiword terms several nouns and adjectives can be presented:

fissūra horizontālis pulmōnis dextri (horizontal fissure of right lung);

processus uncinātus vertēbrae thoracīcae primae (uncinate process of the first thoracic vertebra)

§ 19. Grammar categories of noun

The grammar categories of a Latin noun are the following:

1. Gender. 2. Number. 3. Case. 4. Declension.

There are three genders in Latin: masculine (masculīnum **m**); feminine (feminīnum **f**); neutral (neutrum **n**).

English nouns, in contrast to Latin ones, have only a natural gender: nouns denoting males are masculine (boy, man), nouns denoting females are feminine (girl, women) and nouns denoting inanimate objects are of neutral gender (bone, vessel).

Latin nouns always have only a grammar gender, which is determined by the ending, but what is more significant, by gender signs too (m, f, n). These gender signs are given in the dictionaries, where nouns are presented in the so-called word or dictionary form, which we shall discuss later.

As to the number, both English and Latin have two numbers – singular (*singulāris*) and plural (*plurālis*). Just like in English, the number of the noun in Latin shows whether we speak about one thing or more than one. Plural indications in English are very simple (endings -s or -es). In Latin, these indications are more numerous and are determined by the gender and declension. Plural endings will be discussed in detail in a special section.

Case as a grammar category is not presented in every language. It is absent, for example, in French, Italian and Spanish. As to English, we can speak about a “common case” and a “possessive case”. In contrast to English, in Latin there are six different forms of noun endings corresponding to each case. Only four case forms of Latin nouns are used in medical terms:

Nominatīvus, Nominative (answers the questions *who, what*)

Genetīvus, Genitive (answers the questions *whose, of what*)

Accusatīvus, Accusative (answers the questions *whom, what*)

Ablatīvus, Ablative (answers the questions *by whom, with what*).

The first two cases (Nominative and Genitive) are mainly used in the medical terminology, the other cases occur more rarely, they are used in anatomical and pharmaceutical terms in combination with prepositions.

§ 20. Dictionary form of nouns

It is of vital importance to always remember that each Latin noun must be learnt in its “Dictionary form”. This form consists of three components:

1. The full form of the Nominative singular.

2. The Genitive singular ending, indicating the type of declension.
3. Definition of the grammar gender (with the letters m, f, n):

Written form	Oral form	English equivalent of the noun
ala, ae f	ala, alae, femininum	wing
ligamentum, i n	ligamentum, ligamenti, neutrum	ligament
nervus, i m	nervus, nervi, masculinum	nerve
cancer, cri m	cancer, cancri, masculinum	cancer
Eucalyptus, i f	Eucalyptus, Eucalypti, femininum	eucalypt
cornu, us n	cornu, cornus, neutrum	horn
corpus, ōris n	corpus, corpōris, neutrum	body

§ 21. The stem of the noun and the way to determine it

The stem of the noun is essential for declining and word building. It is determined by removing the Genitive ending which indicates the type of the declension:

Dictionary form	Full form of the Genitive	Stem of noun
crista, ae f <i>crest</i>	crist-ae	crist-
sulcus, i m <i>furrow, groove, sulcus</i>	sulc-i	sulc-
cancer, cri m <i>cancer</i>	cancr-i	cancr-
forāmen, ĩnis n <i>opening</i>	foramĩn-is	foramĩn-
arcus, us m <i>arch</i>	arc-us	arc-
facies, ēi f <i>face, surface</i>	faci-ēi	faci-

§ 22. Description of declensions

Nouns with the ending **-ae** in the Genitive singular belong **to the 1st declension**; they are mainly feminine:

ala, ae f *wing*

crista, ae f *crest*

vertēbra, ae f *vertebra*

Nouns having the ending **-i** in the Genitive singular belong **to the 2nd declension**.

Nouns of the **masculine gender** can have the ending **-us** in the Nominative (the greatest part) or **-er** (very limited in number):

angŭlus, i m *angle*

muscŭlus, i m *muscle*

nervus, i m *nerve*

cancer, cri m *cancer* (the full form of Genitive – **cancri**)

Nouns of the **neutral gender** have also two types: nouns with the ending form **-um** (the main part), and nouns with the ending form **-on** (they are of Greek origin), compare:

ligamentum, i n *ligament*

dorsum, i n *back*

encephālon, i n *brain*

colon, i n *colon, large intestine*

The 3rd declension is the most numerous one. Here are presented the nouns of all genders and with different endings in the Nominative having the ending **-is** in the Genitive. They are commonly divided into two groups.

The first one includes nouns having equal number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive (so-called *parisyllaba*):

basis, basis f (basis, is f) *base*

canālis, canālis m (canalis, is m) *canal*

The second and the most numerous part of the nouns has one more syllable in the Genitive compared to the Nominative (so-called *imparisyllaba*):

apex, apĭcis m (the written dictionary form apex, ĭcis m) *apex, tip*

tuberositas, tuberositātis f (tuberositas, ātis f) *tuberosity*

forāmen, foramīnis n (forāmen, ĩnis n) *foramen, opening*

If such nouns have only one syllable in the Nominative, then the complete form of the Genitive is:

dens, dentis m *tooth*

os, ossis n *bone*

pars, partis f *part*

The 4th declension includes nouns of the masculine and neutral gender having the ending **-us** in the Genitive:

processus, processus m (processus, us m) *process*

ductus, ductus m (ductus, us m) *duct*

cornu, cornus n (cornu, us n) *horn*

The 5th declension includes nouns having the ending **-ei** in the Genitive:

facies, faciēi f (facies, ēi f) 1) *face* 2) *surface*

Attention! Remember the following:

1. Feminine nouns may occur in the 2nd and 4th declensions, masculine ones in the 1st: oculista, ae m (ophthalmologist), Eucalyptus, i f (eucalyptus), manus, us f (hand).

2. Two groups of nouns of the Greek origin retain their particular form:

2.1. Feminine nouns with the ending **-e** in the Nominative and **-es** in the Genitive: raphe, es f (a seam on the bony tissue).

2.2. Masculine nouns with the ending **-es** in the Nominative and **-ae** in the Genitive: diabētes, ae m (diabetes)

§ 23. Exercises

1. Give in written form the dictionary form of the following nouns:

apex, basis, canālis, cancer, cornu, corpus, cranium, dens, encephālon, facies, ganglion, lingua, mandibŭla, nasus, nervus, orgānon, os, radix, scapŭla, sternum, sulcus, tuber, tubercŭlum, tuberositas

2. Give in written form the dictionary form of the following nouns and define their stem and declension:

abdomen, angle, arch, base, bone, canal, crest, duct, head, horn, ligament, lower jaw, nose, opening, region, root (radix), skin, skull, surface, tongue, tooth, upper jaw

3. Write down the dictionary form of the nouns, translate the terms from Latin:

apex linguae; angŭlus faciēi nasi; basis crani; canālis radīcis dentis; corpus vertēbrae; facies tubercŭli costae; incisŭra mandibŭlae; nervus encephāli; pars faciēi sterni; septum nasi; sulcus sinus; tuber maxillae

4. Give the dictionary form of each noun, translate the terms into Latin:

abdomen cavity (= cavity of abdomen); arch of aorta; base of mandible; body of upper jaw; canal of dental radix (= canal of radix of tooth); cancer of the skin; cavity of the nose; cervical part (= part of cervix); crest of the rib head (= crest of head of rib); face bone (= bone of face); nerve of the brain; nervous node of the neck; part of the process; region of skull; skin nerve (= nerve of the skin); sternal angle (= angle of sternum); surface of knee; tip of the horn; vertebral arch (= arch of vertebra)

§ 24. Vocabulary to lesson 3

I. Latin – English vocabulary

1st declension

costa, ae f

rib

incisūra, ae f	incisure, slit or notch
lingua, ae f	tongue
mandibŭla, ae f	lower jaw, mandible
maxilla, ae f	upper jaw, maxilla

2nd declension

angŭlus, i m	angle
cancer, cri m	cancer
cranium, i n	skull
encephălon i n	brain
ganglion, i n	nervous node
nasus, i m	nose
nervus, i m	nerve
orgănon, i n	organ
septum, i n	septum, dividing wall
sternum, i n	sternum, breast- bone
sulcus, i m	sulcus, furrow or groove
tubercŭlum, i n	tubercle, small rounded swelling

3rd declension

apex, ĩcis m	apex, tip
basis, is f	base
caput, ĩtis n	head
canălis, is m	canal
corpus, ōris n	body
dens, dentis m	tooth
os, ossis n	bone
radix, ĩcis f	radix, root
regio, ōnis f	region

tuber, ěris n	tuber, large rounded swelling
tuberositas, ātis f	tuberosity

4th declension

cornu, us n	horn, horn- shaped process
processus, us m	process
sinus, us m	sinus, hollow curvature or cavity

5th declension

facies, ěi f	face, surface
--------------	---------------

II. English - Latin vocabulary

abdomen	abdōmen, ĩnis n
aorta	aorta, ae f
angle	angŭlus, i m
apex, top	apex, ĩcis m
arch	arcus, us m
base	basis, is f
body	corpus, ōris n
bone	os, ossis n
canal	canālis, is m
cavity	cavitas, ātis f
cervical: see neck	cervix, ĩcis f
costal: see rib	costa, ae f
cranial: see skull	cranium, i n
crest	crista, ae f
dental: see tooth	dens, dentis m
duct	ductus, us m
ganglion, nervous node	ganglion, i n

face	facies, ēi f
head	caput, ūtis n
horn	cornu, us n
knee	genu, us n
ligament	ligamentum, i n
lower jaw, mandible	mandibŭla, ae f
neck	cervix, īcis f
nerve	nervus, i m
nose	nasus, i m
opening	forāmen, ūnis n
part	pars, partis f
region	regio, ōnis f
rib	costa, ae f
root, radix	radix, īcis f
skin	cutis, is f
skull	cranium, i n
surface	facies, ēi f
tongue	lingua, ae f
tooth	dens, dentis m
upper jaw, maxilla	maxilla, ae f
vertebra	vertēbra, ae f
vertebral: see vertebra	vertēbra, ae f

Lesson 4

ADJECTIVES AND THEIR DICTIONARY FORM. ADJECTIVE AND NOUN AGREEMENT

§ 25. Introductory information about adjectives in Latin

Both in English and Latin the adjective is a word expressing the quality of a thing: long, short, nasal, simple and so on.

But in contrast to English, Latin adjectives have always grammar agreement with their nouns, that is a noun and an adjective must have the same gender, case and number. The adjective follows the noun.

According to their endings all Latin adjectives are divided into two groups.

§ 26. 1st group of adjectives

Adjectives which have three gender endings make up the 1st group: Masculine forms have the ending **-us** or **-er**, Feminine – **-a**, Neutral – **-um**:

Masculine	Feminine	Neutral
longus (long)	longa	longum
liber (free)	liběra	liběrum
dexter (right)	dextra	dextrum

The dictionary form of adjectives includes the full masculine form, endings of the feminine and the neutral ones (when answering, **every gender form is pronounced!**). All these forms are in the Nominative:

longus, a, um – long	oral form: longus, longa, longum
liber, ěra, ěrum – free	oral form: liber, liběra, liběrum
dexter, tra, trum – right	oral form: dexter, dextra, dextrum

In the last two adjectives the endings of the feminine and the neutral forms are enlarged. It is common for the adjectives with the ending **-er** in the masculine form because it helps us determine, whether the vowel **-e** in the feminine and the neutral forms is lost or not.

The gender forms of the adjectives of this group have the declension pattern in the nouns of the 1st and 2nd declensions: feminine forms are declined like the

Masculine and Feminine form	Neutral form	Genitive form	Stem
brevis (brief, short)	breve	brevis	brev-
frontālis (frontal)	frontāle	frontālis	frontal-
sacrālis (sacral)	sacrāle	sacrālis	sacral-

Adjectives of this subgroup are the most numerous in every branch of medical terminology.

The dictionary form of these adjectives consists of the full masculine / feminine form and the ending of neutral:

brevis, e; frontalis, e; sacralis, e

The third subgroup is made up of adjectives with one ending, common for the three genders. There are four kinds of such common endings:

- 1) **-ns**: sapiens (masculine, feminine, neutral) intelligent
- 2) **-s**: teres (masculine, feminine, neutral) round
- 3) **-r**: par (masculine, feminine, neutral) equal, pair
- 4) **-x**: simplex (masculine, feminine, neutral) simple

Let us look at these adjectives from the point of view of their Genitive form and their stem:

Gender form	Nominative form	Genitive form	Stem
masculine	sapiens		sapient-
feminine	sapiens		
neutral	sapiens		
masculine	teres		teret-
feminine	teres		
neutral	teres		
masculine	par		par-
feminine	par		
neutral	par		
masculine	simplex		simplic-
feminine	simplex		

neutral	simplex		
---------	---------	--	--

The dictionary form of these adjectives includes the Nominative form and the Genitive ending:

sapiens, entis (oral form sapiens, sapientis)

teres, ětis (oral form teres, terětis)

par, is (oral form par, paris)

simplex, ěcis (oral form simplex, simplicis)

§ 28. Adjective and noun agreement

To agree an adjective and a noun in Latin means to say or to write these parts of speech in the same gender, number and case. To do it you should:

- 1) imagine or write dictionary forms of the noun and adjective;
- 2) correctly determine the gender, number and case of the noun;
- 3) place the noun in the first place of the term
- 4) choose the correct grammar form of the adjective for this noun and put it in the second place (after the noun).

Let us take, e. g., the following word combinations:

1) sacral vertebra 2) carotid tubercle 3) palatine groove

First of all, let us write down the dictionary form of every word:

sacral – sacrālis, e; carotid – carotĭcus, a, um; tubercle – tubercŭlum, i n;
palatine – palatĭnus, a, um; groove – sulcus, i m; vertebra – vertĕbra, ae f

Now, let us make up the procedure of agreement:

1) vertĕbra: gender – feminine, number – singular, case – Nominative.

So in the dictionary form of the adjective we choose the form *sacralis* and agree it in this way with the noun *vertebra*: *vertebra sacralis*

2) tubercŭlum: gender – neutral, singular, Nominative.

That's why we choose the adjective form *caroticum* and make up the term *tuberculum caroticum*.

3) *sulcus*: Masculine, Singular, Nominative.

So for this noun we need the adjective form *palatinus*. Writing down it after the noun *sulcus* we get as a result the term *sulcus palatinus*.

If we have to agree two adjectives with one noun, the order of agreement is the following. The adjective indicating the main space location of the object (*cardiacus*, a, um cardiac; *cervicalis*, e cervical, *gastricus*, a, um gastric and so on) is placed after the noun: right gastric artery – *arteria gastrica dextra*, deep lymph vessel – *vas lymphaticum profundum*.

One should be able not only to agree adjectives and nouns in the Nominative, but also make up the Genitive form from this Nominative construction. So, let us make the Genitive forms of the above mentioned Nominative forms:

1) *vertebra sacralis*: from the dictionary form we already know the Genitive form and let's write it down: *vertebrae*. Now, we have to determine the Genitive form of *sacralis*. As we have seen above, this adjective belongs to the third declension, that's why the Genitive form should have the ending -is, that is *sacralis*, which finally makes in the Genitive the word combination *vertebrae sacralis*.

2) *tuberculum caroticum*: both the noun and the adjective belong to the second declension, that's why they have to receive the ending -i in the Genitive form – *tuberculi carotici*.

3) *sulcus palatinus*: *sulcus*, as it is evident from the dictionary form, belongs to the second declension, the ending -us in the adjective *palatinus* tells us that this form belongs to the second declension and so we can determine the Genitive form as *palatini*. The whole term in Genitive form is *sulci palatini*.

§ 29. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form of the following adjectives:

articulāris, celēris, compositum, dextrum, frontālis, impar, interna, libĕrum, nasāle, palatīna, sapiens, simplex, teres, thoracicum

2. Make up the dictionary form of every word, translate the word combinations and add forms of the Genitive singular for every word combination:

articulatio simplex; canālis longus; cornu coccygĕum; ductus sublinguālis; facies articulāris; ganglion impar; ligamentum teres; margo sinister; os hyoideum; pars dextra; pulsus cardiācus celer; sulcus brevis; vas lymphaticum profundum; vena occipitālis

3. Agree the following adjectives with the nouns:

angŭlus, i m (frontālis, e; masloideus, a, um);

articulatio, ōnis f (compositus, a, um; sinister, tra, trum; simplex, ĩcis);

facies, ěi f (costālis, e; internus, a, um; dexter, tra, trum);

ganglion, i n (impar, āris; sublinguālis, e);

ligamentum, i n (teres, ětis; brevis, e);

margo, ĩnis m (dexter, tra, trum; liber, ěra, ěrum; nasālis, e);

musculus, i m (teres, ětis; magnus, a, um);

nervus, i m (hypoglossus, a, um; occipitālis, e);

pars, partis f (petrōsus, a, um; frontālis, e);

processus, us m (articularis, e; palatīnus, a, um; brevis, e);

ramus, i m (communĭcans, ntis; costālis, e; externus, a, um);

4. Make up grammatical agreement of the adjectives with the nouns in Latin:

arch (dental, venous, left); artery (deep, lingual, right); bone (short, palatine, hyoid); canal (long, short, sacral); crest (lacrimal, external); duct (hepatic, sublingual); joint (complex, simple); process (palatine, costal); region (cervical, mastoid); tubercle (carotid, lateral); vein (deep, sacral); vertebra (prominent, thoracic); vessel (left, lymphatic)

5. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate the following terms into Latin:

articular surface; costal arch; deep lymphatic vessel; frontal crest; lateral thoracic vein; lateral pterygoid muscle; left hepatic duct; long ligament; medial root; occipital artery; occipital angle; oval opening; palatine process; superficial vein; vertebral column

§ 30. Vocabulary to lesson 4

I. Latin – English vocabulary

1st declension

arteria, ae f	artery
vena, ae f	vein
vertebra, ae f	vertebra

2nd declension

ligamentum, i n	ligament
muscūlus, i m	muscle

3rd declension

articulatio, ōnis f	joint
margo, ĩnis m	margin, border
pars, partis f	part
vas, vasis n	vessel

4th declension

ductus, us m	duct
pulsus, us m	pulse

1st group of adjectives

cardiācus, a, um	cardiac
coccygēus, a, um	coccygeal

compositus, a, um	complex
dexter, tra, trum	right
externus, a, um	external
iliacus, a, um	iliac
internus, a, um	internal
hyoideus, a, um	hyoid (bone)
hypoglossus, a, um	hypoglossal (canal)
liber, ěra, ěrum	free
longus, a, um	long
lymphaticus, a, um	lymphatic
magnus, a, um	large (vein), magnus (adductor), great (nerve)
mastoideus, a, um	mastoid
palatinus, a, um	palatine
petrosus, a, um	stony
profundus, a, um	deep
sacer, cra, crum	sacral (bone)
sinister, tra, trum	left
thoracicus, a, um	thoracic

2nd group of adjectives

articulāris, e	articular
brevis, e	short
celer, ěris, ěre	celer (pulse), swift
communīcans, ntis	ommunicative
costālis, e	costal
frontālis, e	frontal
impar, ěris	impar, unpaired
nasālis, e	nasal

occipitālis, e	occipital
sacrālis, e	sacral
sapiens, entis	intelligent, clever
simplex, ĩcis	simple
sublinguālis, e	sublingual (excepting bone)
superficiālis, e	superficial
teres, ětis	round (excepting foramen)

II. English - Latin glossary

artery	arteria, ae f
carotid	carotĭcus, a, um
cervical	cervicālis, e
column	columna, ae f
complex	compositus, a, um
costal	costālis, e
deep	profundus, a, um
dental	dentālis, e
duct	ductus, us m
external	externus, a, um
hepatic	hepatĭcus, a, um
hyoid	hyoideus, a, um (os)
joint	articulatio, ōnis f
lacrimal	lacrimālis, e
lateral	laterālis, e
ligament	ligamentum, i n
lingual	linguālis, e
left	sinister, tra, trum
long	longus, a, um

lymphatic	lymphaticus, a, um
mastoid	mastoideus, a, um
medial	mediālis, e
occipital	occipitālis, e
oval	ovālis, e
palatine	palatīnus, a, um
prominent	promīnens, entis
pterygoid	pterygoideus, a, um
right	dexter, tra, trum
sacral	sacrālis, e (except for os)
short	brevis, e
superficial	uperficiālis, e
sublingual	sublingualis, e (except for os and nervus)
vein	vena, ae f
venous	venōsus, a, um
vertebral	vertebrālis, e
vessel	vas, vasis n

Lesson 5

DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

PECULIARITIES OF THE USE OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE DEGREES IN ANATOMICAL TERMS

§ 31. Introductory remarks to the topic

Comparative and superlative as degrees of comparison exist both in English and Latin, that's why there is no need to explain the essence of these grammar

phenomenon. It is more essential to note that in the international medical nomenclatures, the forms of comparative and superlative have a relatively narrow sphere of use. Most frequently they are used in the anatomical terminology. As to the grammar formation, both comparative and superlative are built from the stem of the positive degree, that is from the dictionary form of the adjective.

§ 32. The comparative degree

To form the comparative degree, it is necessary: 1) to find the stem of the positive degree and 2) to add the suffix **-ior** for the masculine and feminine forms and **-ius** for the neutral form:

Positive degree	Stem	Comparative masculine and feminine form	Comparative neutral form	Translation
longus, a, um (long)	long-	longior	longius	longer
ruber, bra, brum (red)	rubr-	rubrior	rubrius	redder
simplex, ĩcis (simple)	simplic-	simplicior	simplicius	more simple

The full dictionary form of the masculine and the feminine has the ending **-ior** while the neutral form has **-ius**:

longior, ius (written dictionary form)	longior, longius (oral form)
rubrior, ius (written dictionary form)	rubrior, rubrius (oral form)
simplicior, ius (written dictionary form)	simplicior, simplicius (oral form)

Adjectives in the comparative degree have the same pattern of declension as nouns of the third declension. Their distinctive feature is the ending **-ōris** in the Genitive:

Nominative form of comparative	Genitive form of comparative	Stem
longior (m, f) longius (n)	longiōris	longior-
rubrior (m, f) rubrius (n)	rubriōris	rubrior-
simplicior simplicius	simpliciōris	simplicior-

The grammar agreement of the comparative form with nouns follows the common rules:

Positive degree	Comparative degree
m m processus longus	m m processus longior
n n ligamentum longius	n n ligamentum longius
f f costa longa	f f costa longior
n n systema simplex	n n systema simplicius

§ 33. Comparative forms in anatomical terminology

In anatomical (and histological) terminology only limited forms of adjectives in the comparative degree are used. First of all, comparative forms of the adjectives great (large) and little (small) are used:

Positive degree of Latin adjective	English equivalents	Comparative form of Latin adjectives	English anatomical equivalents
magnus, a, um	great, large	maior (major) maius (majus)	greater, larger, major
parvus, a, um	little, small	minor, minus	lesser, smaller, minor

In the forms minor, minus we don't see the full endings -ior, -ius, but that is a distinctive feature of these forms to remember.

In anatomical terminology four adjectives in the comparative form are also used, although from the point of view of English, not every of such forms expresses comparison:

Latin masculine and feminine form	Latin neural form	Latin dictionary form	English anatomical equivalent
anterior	anterius	anterior, ius	anterior
posterior	posterius	posterior, ius	posterior
superior	superius	superior, ius	upper, superior
inferior	inferius	inferior, ius	lower, inferior

Thus, only 6 adjectives in the comparative degree are used in Latin anatomical terminology:

Latin dictionary form	Genitive form	Stem
anterior, ius	anteriōris	anterior-
posterior, ius	posteriōris	posterior-
superior, ius	superiōris	superior-
inferior, ius	inferiōris	inferior-
major, ius	majōris	major-
minor, us	minōris	minor-

We should note that the stem of the adjectives in the comparative degree coincides with the Nominative masculine and feminine forms ending with -ior.

The Genitive singular form in the comparative degree is formed by adding the ending **-is** to the stem.

It is necessary to remember that Latin adjectives in the comparative degree are always placed last in the multiword term:

facies articularis superior – *superior articular surface*

musculus obliquus capitis inferior – *inferior oblique muscle of head*

§ 34. The superlative degree

Commonly, the superlative degree is formed by adding the suffix -issim- and gender endings -us, -a, -um to the stem of the positive degree:

Positive degree	Stem	Superlative degree	English equivalent
latus, a, um (broad, vast, wide)	lat-	latissimus, a, um	the broadest (vastest, widest), latissimus (in Anatomy)
longus, a, um (long)	long-	longissimus, a, um	the longest
subtilis, e (fine)	subtil-	subtilissimus, a, um	the finest

Some forms of superlative degree are formed in a special way:

Initial form	Superlative degree	English anatomical equivalent
magnus, a, um (great)	maximus, a, um	the greatest, maximus
parvus, a, um (little, small)	minimus, a, um	the least, minimus
inferior, ius (inferior, lower)	imus, a, um	lower, imus
superior, ius (superior, upper)	supremus, a, um	supreme, the highest

The dictionary form of adjectives in the superlative degree is similar to adjectives of the first group with the endings -us, -a, um. They are declined also like the adjectives of the first group and their stem is determined similarly.

§ 35. Peculiarities of the use of the comparison degrees of the adjectives magnus, a, um and parvus, a, um in Latin anatomical terminology

The quality of great (large) or little (small) can be expressed in Latin anatomical terminology by different forms of comparison degrees but the use of these forms, as a rule, is strictly regulated. As to English equivalent forms, unfortunately, we don't observe here such a strict regulation. Moreover, different

variants of above mentioned adjectives in different editions of “The International Anatomical Terminology” are used. In this textbook we have decided to use only the terms presented in the last official edition, that is “International Anatomical Terminology. FCAT. Federative Committee on Anatomical Terminology” — Stuttgart — New York: Thieme, 1998. It is necessary to stress that in this edition, the above mentioned Latin adjectives in comparative and superlative forms are namely used as English anatomical equivalents.

Let us systematize the forms of comparison degrees of the above mentioned adjectives:

Latin positive degree	English equivalent	Latin comparative degree	English anatomical equivalent	Latin superlative degree	English anatomical equivalent
magnus, a, um	great, large, magnus	major, majus	greater, larger, major	maximus, a, um	maximus, major
parvus, a, um	little, small	minor, minus, smaller	lesser, smaller, minor	minus, a, um	minus, little

Now some notes about the use of Latin degree comparison forms that you should remember.

1. Forms **magnus** / **parvus** are used, if a solitary anatomical structure is indicated:

forāmen (occipitāle) magnum – *foramen (occipital) magnum*

arteria pancreatīca magna – *greater pancreatic artery*

vena magna cerēbri – *great cerebral vein*

nervus aureculāris magnus – *great auricular nerve*

musculus adductor magnus – *adductor magnus muscle*

nucleus magnus – *large nucleus*

2. Forms **major** / **minor** are used if dimensions of two similar and placed next to each other anatomical structures are compared:

ala major / ala minor – *greater wing / lesser wing*

pelvis major / pelvis minor – *greater pelvis / lesser pelvis*

nervus petrosus major / nervus petrosus minor – *greater petrosal nerve / lesser petrosal nerve*

musculus pectoralis major / musculus pectoralis minor – *pectoral major muscle / pectoral minor muscle*

musculus teres major / musculus teres minor – *teres major muscle / teres minor muscle*

There are some exceptions from this rule:

musculus adductor magnus / musculus adductor minimus – *adductor magnus / adductor minimus*

vena cardiaca magna / vena cardiaca parva – *great cardiac vein / small cardiac vein*

vena saphena magna / vena saphena parva – *great saphenous vein / small saphenous vein*

The forms major / minor are most common in Latin anatomical terminology. As for English equivalents of such terms there is no, unfortunately, universal pattern of systematization of their use, and some irregular translation variants sometimes should be used, compare:

anulus iridis major – *outer border of iris*

anulus iridis minor – *inner border of iris*

One more example. It isn't clear why the equivalent to *arteria pancreatica magna* in English is *greater pancreatic artery*, though there isn't any artery with the

opposite sense (lesser, smaller, minor) near this artery. Such examples can be numerous.

3. Forms *maximus* / *minimus* are used in two meanings:

a) in the meaning of the positive degree *parvus* (little):

digītus minimus – little finger (in the list of the terms of general anatomy).

But in terms with the noun muscle are so-called Latin Technical Termini (naturally, in English pronunciation as in other similar cases) used:

musculus extensor digīti minimi – *extensor digiti minimi*

musculus adductor digīti minimi brevis – *adductor digiti minimi brevis*

musculus oppōnens digīti minimi – *opponens digiti minimi*

In these cases the English equivalent *minimus* is to be understood as “the least”.

b) forms **maximus** / **minimus** only in the meaning the greatest / the least are used in the following terms:

musculus glutēus maximus – *gluteus maximus muscle*

musculus glutēus minimus – *gluteus minimus muscle*

musculus scalēnus minimus – *scalenus minimus muscle*

And only in one case the English form of the superlative degree is used:

foramīna venārum minimārum – openings of the smallest (cardiac) veins

§ 36. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word, translate it into English and make up the Genitive form of each word combination:

ala major; cartilāgo alaris major; cornu majus; facies anterior; ganglion cervicāle superius; incisūra vertebrālis inferior; ligamentum longitudināle anterius; nervus alveolāris inferior; pelvis major; spina tympanīca major; sulcus minor, tubercūlum majus

2. *Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:*

arcus anterior atlantis; arteria thyroidea ima; concha nasālis suprēma; crista tubercūli majōris; facies anterior partis petrōsae; fossa cranii anterior; labium faciēi inferius; muscūlus longissīmus capītis (thorācis); muscūlus palpēbrae superiōris; nervus splanchnīcus imus, paries anterior gastris; pars libēra membri superiōris; plica duodēni major; spina iliāca posterior inferior; sulcus sinus petrōsi inferiōris; vena saphēna parva

3. *Write down the dictionary form and translate from English into Latin:*

adductor magnus muscle; anterior ethmoidal opening; bursa of the broadest muscle of back; crest of greater tubercle; gluteus minimus muscle; great auricular nerve; lesser horn; greater palatine groove; greater petrosal nerve; groove for inferior petrosal sinus; groove for lesser petrosal nerve; highest nuchal line; inferior surface of the tongue; large nucleus; latissimus dorsi (muscle); lesser pelvis; lesser splanchnic nerve; lesser wing of sphenoidal bone; lower articular process; lower lip; major sublingual duct; posterior longitudinal ligament; small saphenous vein; smaller rhomboid muscle; superior nerve node; teres minor muscle; upper (lower) head

Attention! Constructions with the preposition **for** + **adjective** + **noun** are to be translated into Latin as the **Genitive form without a preposition**: canal for vertebral artery – canālis arteriae vertebrālis.

§ 37. Vocabulary to lesson 5

I. Latin – English vocabulary

Nouns of the 1st declension

ala, ae f	wing
concha, ae f	concha (shell-shaped hole)
crista, ae f	crest

fossa, ae f	fossa (little hole)
palpēbra, ae f	eyelid
plica, ae f	fold
spina, ae f	spine

Nouns of the 2nd declension

duodēnum, i n	duodenum
labium, i n	lip
membrum, i n	limb

Nouns of the 3rd declension

atlas, ntis m	atlas (the first cervical vertebra)
cartilāgo, ĩnis f	cartilage
gaster, tris f	stomach
paries, ětis m	wall
pelvis, is f	pelvis
thorax, ācis m	thorax, chest

Adjectives of the 1st group

imus, a, um	imus (ima), lower
longissĭmus, a, um	the longest
parvus, a, um	little, small
saphēnus, a, um	saphenous
suprēmus, a, um	supreme, the highest
thyr(e)oideus, a, um	thyroid

Adjectives of the 2nd group

alveolāris, e	alveolar
cervicālis, e	cervical
longitudinālis, e	longitudinal
vertebrālis, e	vertebral

Adjectives in the form of comparative degree

anterior, ius	anterior
posterior, ius	posterior
superior, ius	superior, upper
inferior, ius	inferior, lower
major, ius	major, greater
minor, ius	minor, lesser, smaller

II. English - Latin glossary

anterior	anterior, ius
auricular	auriculāris, e
adductor	(muscūlus) adductor, ōris m
back	dorsum, i n
broadest	latissīmus, a, um
bursa (pouch, sac)	bursa, ae f
ethmoidal	ethmoidālis, e
gluteal	glutēus, a, um
greater	major, jus
head	caput, ūtis n
highest	suprēmus, a, um
imus, ima	imus, a, um
inferior	inferior, ius
large	magnus, a, um
latissimus	latissīmus, a um
lesser	minor, us
lip	labium, i n
longitudinal	longitudinālis, e
lower	inferior, ius
magnus, magnum	magnus, a, um

major	major, jus
minimus	minĭmus, a, um
minor	minor, us
nerve node	ganglion, i n
nucleus	nucleus, i m
nuchal	nuchālis, e
pectoral	pectorālis, e
petrosal	petrōsus, a, um
rhomboid	rhomboideus, a, um
saphenous	saphēnus. a, um
smaller	minor, us
sphenoidal	sphenoidālis, e
splanchnic	splanchnĭcus, a, um
superior, upper	superior, ius
thyroid	thyr(e)oideus, a, um

Lesson 6

THE MASCULINE GENDER

IN THE THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

NAMES OF MUSCLES PERFORMING DIFFERENT FUNCTIONS

§ 38. Masculine names in the third declension from the point of view of their endings in the Nominative and the Genitive

All masculine names in the third declension may be grouped according to the following table:

Nominative ending	Genitive ending	Example	Exceptions
-er	-ēris -ĕris -tris	trochanter, ēris m <i>trochanter</i> vomer, ĕris m <i>vomer</i> venter, ntris m <i>belly of the muscle</i>	cadāver, ĕris n <i>cadaver, dead body</i> tuber, ĕris n <i>tuber</i> gaster, tris f <i>stomach</i> mater, tris f 1) <i>mater, 2) cerebral coat</i>
-es	-ĕdis -ĕtis	pes, pedis m <i>foot</i> paries, ĕtis m <i>wall</i>	—
-ex	-īcis	cortex, ĭcis m <i>cortex, crust</i>	—
-o	-īnis -ōnis	homo, ĭnis m <i>man</i> pulmo, ōnis m <i>lung</i>	—
-or	-ōris	tumor, ōris m <i>tumor</i>	arbor, ōris f <i>tree</i> cor, cordis n <i>heart</i>
-os	-oris	flos, floris m <i>flower</i>	os, oris n <i>mouth</i> os, ossis n <i>bone</i>

Learning by heart this table helps constitute agreement of adjectives and nouns.

§ 39. Some explanations to the exceptions presented in the table

1. The noun arbor is used to denote two anatomical structures having a shape similar to a tree:

a) arbor bronchiālis (bronchial tree)

b) arbor vitae cerebelli (arbor vitae of cerebellum, medullar body of cerebellum having a form of a tree in its sections).

2. The noun mater in the combination with adjectives takes the second place:

- a) dura mater encephali (cranialis) – dura mater of brain (cranial dura mater)
- b) pia mater medullae spinalis – spinal pia mater
- c) arachnoidea mater – arachnoid mater

§ 40. Latin names of muscles performing different functions

Latin names of muscles performing different functions (rotation, raising, pressing, bending and so on) consist of two words. The noun *musculus* (m.) is put in the first place with the name of the muscle following it:

- m. (*musculus*) *levator* – Levator
- m. (*musculus*) *masseter* – Masseter
- m. (*musculus*) *tensor* – Tensor

As we see, English equivalents contain merely the name of a muscle. This rule relates to all muscle names of English anatomical terms.

It is important to remember that in Latin terms the following strict word order of muscle names is observed.

1. The noun muscle takes the 1st place.
2. The name of muscle takes the 2nd place.
3. The name of the structure, where the muscle is functioning, takes the third place and this name consisting of one or two words is always presented in the Genitive.
4. If the muscle has an adjective (*long, short, vast* and so on), this adjective is the last in the combination:

Extensor digiti minimi – *musculus extensor digiti minimi*

Flexor pollicis brevis – *musculus flexor pollicis brevis*

Pronator quadratus – *musculus pronator quadratus*

Tensor veli palatini – *musculus tensor veli palatini*

Levator anguli oris – musculus levator anguli oris

As we can see, Latin technical terms predominate in English equivalents. Genuine English names are absent and Latin words are transliterated.

As to the Latin names of muscles which denote different functions, they are, as a rule, nouns of the third declension with the ending -or, more seldom -er. To be more precise, 18 muscles have the ending **-or** and only 3 – the ending **-er**.

In two cases, there are several muscle names to denote the same function. So muscles named arrector, cremaster, levator may fulfill elevation. The muscles compressor, constrictor, sphincter fulfill compression. In these cases every muscle has its certain sphere of application which is to be memorized.

§ 41. Exercises.

1. Give the dictionary form of every word and translate from Latin:

ala vomeris; arachnoidea mater; arbor vitae cerebelli; cadaver hominis; cortex renalis; dura mater craniālis seu dura mater encephāli; paries externus ductus cochleāris; paries gastris posterior, pars superior pedis dextri; pia mater spinālis; tumor pariētis gastris; venter anterior musculi digastrīci; vestibulum oris

2. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:

angle of mouth; bronchial tree; cardiac notch of left lung; dorsal artery of foot; frontal tuber of cranium; greater trochanter and lesser trochanter; intelligent man (as a biological species); parietal tuber; pelvic part of ureter; posterior wall of stomach; right border of heart; sole of the foot; vomerine groove (= groove of vomer)

3. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:

musculus adductor digiti minimi; musculus levator labii superioris; musculus levator scapulae; musculus pronator quadratus; musculus sphincter pupillae; musculus tensor fasciae latae; pars profunda musculi masseteris

4 Write down the dictionary form and translate from English into Latin:

Adductor minimus; Depressor of lower lip; Extensor indicis; Flexor digiti minimi brevis; Flexor pollicis longus; Rotator of neck; inferior Constrictor of pharynx; Tensor veli palatini

§ 42. Vocabulary to lesson 6

I. Latin – English dictionary

Nouns of the 1st declension

fascia, ae f	fascia
planta, ae f	sole
pupilla, ae f	pupil
scapŭla, ae f	scapula, shoulder blade
vita, ae f	life

Nouns of the 2nd declension

cerebellum, i n	cerebellum
digĭtus, i m	finger
vestibŭlum, i n	vestibule

Nouns of the 3rd declension

m. adductor, ōris m	adductor (bringing muscle)
arbor, ōris f	tree
arbor vitae	arbor vitae
cadāver, ěris n	cadaver (dead body)
cortex, ĭcis m	cortex (crust)
homo, ĭnis m	man, a human
m. levator, ōris m	levator (elevating muscle)
mater, tris f	mater (cerebral coat)

m. massēter, ēris m	masseter (chewing muscle)
os, oris n	mouth
pes, pedis m	foot
m. pronātor, ōris m	pronator (muscle turning the forearm)
ren, renis m	kidney
seu	or
m. sphincter, ēris m	sphincter (compressing muscle)
m. tensor, ōris m	tensor (straining muscle)
tumor, ōris m	tumor (swelling, growth)
vomer, ēris m	vomer
venter, tris m	belly (of the muscle)

Adjectives of the 1st group

arachnoideus, a um	arachnoid
digastricus, a um	digastric
cochleāris, e	cochlear
durus, a, um	solid
dura mater	dura mater
latus, a, um	broad
fascia lata	fascia lata
pius, a, um	pia (mater)
pia mater	pia mater
quadrātus, a, um	square, quadrate (muscle), quadratus (pronator)

Adjectives of the 3rd group

cochleāris, e	cochlear
craniālis, e	cranial
spinālis, e	spinal

II. English – Latin glossary

Adductor (bringing muscle)	m. adductor, ōris m
artery	arteria, ae f
border	margo, ĩnis m
bronchial	bronchiālis, e
Constrictor (compressing muscle)	m. constrictor, ōris m
cranium, skull	cranium, i n
Depressor (lowing muscle)	m. depressor, ōris m
digitus, digiti	digĭtus, i m
dorsal	dorsālis, e
Extensor (unbending muscle)	m. extensor, ōris m
Flexor (bending muscle)	m. flexor, ōris m
foot	pes, pedis m
frontal	frontālis, e
groove	sulcus, i m
heart	cor, cordis n
index, indicis (index finger)	index, ĩcis m
intelligent (a human)	sapiens, ntis
lung	pulmo, ōnis m
man, a human	homo, ĩnis m
mouth	os, oris n
notch	incisura, ae f
or	seu
parietal	parieālis, e
pelvic	pelvĭcus, a, um
pharynx	pharynx, yngis m

pollex, pollicis (thumb)	pollex, ĭcis m
Rotator (rotating muscle)	m. rotātor, ōris m
sole	planta, ae f
stomach	gaster, tris f
Tensor (straining muscle)	m. tensor, ōris m
tree	arbor, ōris f
trochanter	trochanter, ēris m
tuber	tuber, ěris n
ureter	urēter, ēris m
velum, veli (curtain)	velum, i n
vomer	vomer, ěris m
wall	paries, ětis m

Lesson 7

THE FEMININE GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS

§ 43. Systematization of the feminine names in the third declension

All feminine names in the third declension may be systematized in the following table:

Nominative ending	Genitive ending	Examples	Exceptions
-do	-ĭnis	longitūdo, ĭnis f <i>length</i>	tendo, ĭnis m <i>tendon, sinew</i>
-go	-ĭnis	cartilāgo, ĭnis f <i>cartilage</i>	margo, ĭnis m <i>border, edge</i>
-io	-ōnis	articulatio, ōnis f <i>joint</i>	—
-as	-ātis	cavitas, ātis f <i>cavity</i>	atlas, ntis m <i>atlas</i> ; pancreas, ātis n <i>pancreas</i> ;

Nominative ending	Genitive ending	Examples	Exceptions
			vas, vasis n <i>vessel</i>
-is	-is (parisyllaba)	cutis, is f <i>skin</i>	axis, is m <i>axis</i> canālis, is m <i>canal</i> unguis, is m <i>nail</i>
-is	-īdis (imparisyllaba)	pyrāmis, īdis f <i>pyramid</i>	pulvis, ěris m <i>powder</i> sanguis, ĩnis m <i>blood</i>
-us	-ūdis	incus, ūdis f <i>incus,</i> <i>a little bone of the</i> <i>ear</i>	—
consonant + s	consonant +tis	pars, partis f <i>part</i>	dens, dentis m <i>tooth</i>
vowel +x (except -ex)	vowel + -cis vowel + -gis	radix, īcis f <i>root</i>	fornix, ĩcis m <i>fornix, arch</i> hallux, ūcis m <i>hallux, toe</i> coccyx, ŷgis m <i>coccyx,</i> <i>tailbone</i> thorax, ācis m <i>thorax, chest</i>
consonant + x	consonant + - cis consonant + - gis	falx, falcis f <i>falx, sickle</i> phalanx, ngis f <i>phalanx</i>	larynx, ngis m <i>larynx</i> pharynx, ngis m <i>pharynx</i>

§ 44. Exercises.

1. Write down the dictionary form, translate from Latin into English:

articulatio capītis costae; axis bulbi externus; basis pyramīdis renālis;
cartilāgo alāris major; cavitas oris propria; cervix dentis canīni; diamēter pelvis
transversa; margo ciliāris irīdis; margo liber unguis; margo utēri dexter; meātus
acustīcus auris sinistrae; os coccygis; ostium appendīcis vermiformis; pars libēra

gingīvae; plexus venōsus canālis nervi hypoglossi; regio brachii posterior; sanguis venōsus et arteriōsus; tuberositas phalangis distālis; vas lymphaticum superficiāle

2. *Write down the dictionary form, translate into Latin:*

accessory pancreas; anterior arch of atlas; blood vessel of hallux; body of nail; canal of greater petrosal nerve; cartilage of nasal septum; thoracic cavity; ciliary margin of iris; endocrine part of pancreas; fornix of pharynx; free part of upper (lower) limb; greater palatine canal; head of phalanx; inguinal falx or conjoint tendon; knee joint; laryngeal vestibule (= vestibule of larynx); neck of the tooth; left medial division; annular part of fibrous sheath; root canal of tooth; superior ligament of incus; surface of incisor tooth; tail of pancreas; third molar tooth or wisdom tooth; tuberosity of distal phalanx; tympanic cavity of middle ear

§ 45. Vocabulary to lesson 7

I. Latin – English dictionary

Nouns of the 1st declension

cauda, ae f	tail
gingīva, ae f	gingiva, gum
tunīca, ae f	membrane

Nouns of the 2nd declension

brachium, i n	arm
bulbus, i m	eyeball
diamēter, tri f	diameter
ostium, i n	orifice
utērus, i m	uterus

Nouns of the 3rd declension

appendix, ĩcis f	appendix
auris, is f	ear

cavitas, ātis f	cavity
cervix, ĩcis f	cervix
cutis, is f	skin
coccyx, ygis m	coccyx, coccygeal bone
fornix, ĩcis m	vault (of pharynx)
iris, ĩdis f	iris (central part of the eye)
phalanx, ngis f	phalanx
pyrāmis, ĩdis f	pyramid
sanguis, ĩnis m	blood
unguis, is m	nail

Nouns of the 4th declension

meātus, us m	meatus
plexus, us m	plexus

Adjectives of the 1st group

arteriōsus, a um	arterial
acustĭcus, a, um	acoustic (meatus)
canĭnus, a um	canine
proprius, a, um	proper
transversus, a, um	transverse
venōsus, ā, um	venous

Adjectives of the 2nd group

alāris, e	alar
ciliāris, e	ciliary
distālis, e	distal
renālis, e	renal
superficiālis, e	superficial
vermiformis, e	vermiform

accessory	accessorius, a, um
anular, ring-shaped	anulāris, e
blood	sanguis, ĩnis m
cartilage	cartilage, ĩnis f
cavity	cavĭtas, ātis f
ciliary	ciliāris, e
conjoint	conjunctĭvus, a, um
distal	distālis, e
division	divisio, ōnis f
ear	auris, is f
endocrine	endocrĭnus, a, um
falx	falx, falcis f
fibrous	fibrōsus, a, um
fornix	fornix, ĭcis m
free	liber, ěra, ěrum
hallux	hallux, ūcis m
incisor	incisĭvus, a um
incus	incus, ūdis f
inguinal	inguinalis, e
iris	iris, ĭdis f
larynx	larynx, yngis m
limb	membrum, i n
margin	margo, ĩnis m
medial	mediālis, e
middle	medius, a, um
molar	molāris, e
molar tooth	dens molāris

nail	unguis, is m
nasal	nasālis, e
pancreas	pancreas, ātis n
phalanx	phalanx, ngis f
sheath	vagīna, ae f
septum, dividing wall	septum, i n
surface	facies, ēi f
tail	cauda, ae f
third	tertius, a, um
tendon	tendo, ĩnis m
thoracic	thoracĭcus, a, um
tympanic	tympanĭcus, a, um
vestibule	vestibŭlum, i n
wisdom	sapientia, ae f

Lesson 8

THE NEUTRAL GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS

§ 46. Systematization of the neutral names of the third declension

All neutral names in the third declension may be systematized in the following table:

Nominative ending	Genitive ending	Examples	Exception
-al	-ālis	anĭmal, ālis n <i>animal</i>	—
-ar	-āris	calcar, āris n <i>spur</i>	—
-e	-is	rete, is n <i>network</i>	—
-en	-ĭnis	abdōmen, ĭnis n <i>abdomen</i>	lien, ēnis m <i>spleen</i> ren, renis m <i>kidney</i>

Nominative ending	Genitive ending	Examples	Exception
			pecten, ĩnis m <i>pecten, crest</i>
-ma (words of Greek origin)	-ătis	diaphragma, ătis n <i>diaphragm</i>	forma, ae f <i>form</i> ; gemma, ae f bud; mamma, ae f <i>breast</i> ; norma, ae f <i>norm</i> ; rima, ae f <i>rima, fissure, opening</i> ; squama, ae f <i>squamous part, scales</i> ; struma, ae f <i>goiter</i>
-ur	ŏris	femur, ŏris n <i>femur, thigh bone</i>	—
	ŭris	sulfur, ŭris n <i>sulphur</i>	
-us	ĕris	glomus, ĕris n <i>glomus</i>	
	ŏris	pectus, ŏris n <i>chest</i>	
	uris	crus, cruris n (1. <i>shank, leg</i> ; 2. <i>crus, limb (auditory ossicle)</i> ; 3. <i>bundle (of myocardium)</i>)	—
-ut	-ĭtis	caput, ĭtis n <i>head</i>	—

Attention! In the noun *hepar* the last but one vowel of the Genitive form is short: hepătis. Moreover, the stem of this form contains the consonant “t”: *hepat-*.

§ 47. Some explanations concerning the nouns having similar endings but different gender and declension

Now, after having analyzed practically all noun endings of the third declension in the Nominative and the Genitive you can see that sometimes nouns of

different gender and declension may possess the same ending in the Nominative. We can single out at least three groups of such nouns.

1. The most numerous are the nouns with the final element **-us** in the Nominative. Such nouns are found in the 2nd declension and are, as a rule, masculine, but, as we shall see in the pharmaceutical part of our course, the names of trees with the ending **-us** are feminine. Compare:

muscūlus, i m; sulcus, i m **but: Eucalyptus, i f**

The ending **-us** may have the nouns of the feminine and neutral genders belonging to the 3rd declension:

incus, ūdis f; corpus, ōris n.

Finally, not only the nouns of the masculine gender (ductus, us m; processus, us m) have the ending **-us** in the 4th declension. You should memorize the noun manus, us f (hand), and in the pharmaceutical part you will come across the word Quercus, us f (oak).

2. When studying the endings of the neutral gender in the 3rd declension you could pay attention to the two groups of the nouns with the ending **-ma**:

1) diaphragma, ātis n (nouns of Greek origin) but

2) gemma, ae f (seven nouns of Latin origin).

3. Finally, let us analyse the nouns with the ending **-er**. They are not very numerous and may occur among masculine nouns of the 2nd declension (cancer, cri m). Some of them may be feminine (diameter, tri f). The nouns of the 3rd declension with such an ending may be masculine (trochanter, ēris m), feminine (mater, tris f) and neutral (tuber, ěris n).

Summing up, we have to conclude that a Nominative ending can never give us complete and correct information about the grammar status of a noun. We should memorize every noun only in the dictionary form with all its three elements. Only in this way we can avoid making bad grammar mistakes.

§ 48. Exercises.

1. *Make up grammar agreement of the adjectives with the following nouns:*

arcus (dentālis, e; superior, ius; venōsus, a, um); caput (longus, a, um; brevis, e; anterior, ius); cartilāgo (accessorius, a, um; major, jus; alāris, e); crus (ampullāris, e; osseus, a, um; dexter, tra, trum); ligamentum (latus, a, um; longitudinālis, e; minor, us); margo (sinister, tra, trum; teres, ětis; superior, ius); paries (posterior, ius; internus, a, um; simplex, ĭcis); rete (venōsus, a, um; articulāris, e; simplex, ĭcis); tuber (frontālis, e; anterior, ius; major, jus)

2. *Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:*

calicūlus gustatorius seu gemma gustatoria; corpus adipōsum orbītae;
corpus femōris; crus anterius capsūlae internae; diaphragma pelvis; forāmen mastoideum ossis temporālis; glomus carotīcum; pecten ossis pubis; porta hepātis; rima vestibūli laryngis; margo lateralis renis dextri; squama ossis occipitālis; systēma respiratorium

3. *Write down the dictionary form of each word, translate into Latin:*

accessory spleen; anterior region of thigh; body of gallbladder; central nervous system; culmen of the body of cerebellum; dorsal venous network of hand; epigastric region of abdomen; fissure for ligamentum longum of liver; forehead and occiput of head; gastric impression of spleen; hand region; inferior segment of right kidney, lactiferous duct of breast; left crus of diaphragm; mobile liver; optic chiasm; pulvinar of thalamus; rete mirabile; simple membranous crus; squamous part of frontal bone; stroma and parenchyma of thyroid gland; stroma of iris; tegmen of the fourth ventricle; the longest muscle of head

§ 49. Vocabulary to lesson 8

I. Latin – English vocabulary

1st declension

capsūla, ae f	capsula
gemma, ae f	bud
orbīta, ae f	orbit
porta, ae f	porta (gate of the liver)
rima, ae f	fissure, opening
squama, ae f	squamous part, scales
vesīca, ae f	bladder

2nd declension

calicūlus, i m (gustatorius)	bud
segmentum, i n	segment

3rd declension

crus, cruris n	1) shank, leg 2) crus, limb (of auditory ossicle) 3) bundle (of myocardium)
diaphragma, ātis n	diaphragm
femur, ōris n	femur, thigh bone
gemma, ae f	bud
hepar, ātis n	liver
glomus, ěris n	body, enlargement (choroidal), glomus (aortic)
pecten, ĩnis m	pecten
pubes, is f	pubis
rete, is n	1) rete (mirabile) 2) network (dorsal venous network of hand)
systema, ātis n	system

Adjectives of the 1st group

adipōsus, a, um	fat
-----------------	-----

carotīcus, a, um	carotid
felleus, a, um (= biliaris, e)	gall (+Noun)
gustatorius, a, um	taste (+Noun)
osseus, a, um	bony
respiratorius, a, um	respiratory

Adjectives of the 2nd group

ampullāris, e	ampullary
biliāris, e (=felleus, a, um)	gall (+Noun)
dentālis, e	dental
longitudinālis, e	longitudinal

II. English - Latin vocabulary

breast	mamma, ae f
central	centrālis, e
chiasm (chiasma)	chiasma, ātis n
crus	crus, cruris n
culmen	culmen, ĩnis n
diaphragm	diaphragma, ātis
epigastric	epigastrīcus, a, um
fissure	fissūra, ae f
forehead	sincĭput, ĩtis n
fourth	quartus, a, um
gallbladder	vesīca fellea (= vesīca biliāris)
gastric	gastrīcus, a, um
gland	glandŭla, ae f
hand	manus, us f
impression	impressio, ōnis f
lactiferous	lactifĕrus, a, um

liver	hepar, ātis n
membranous	membranaceus, a, um
mirabile	mirabīlis, e
mobile	mobīlis, e
nervous	nervōsus, a, um
occiput	occīput, ītis n
optic	optīcus, a, um
parenchyma	parenchŷma, ātis n
pulvinar	pulvīnar, āris n
rete	rete, is n
spleen	lien, ēnis m
squamous	squamōsus, a, um
stroma	stroma, ātis n
system	systemā, ātis n
tegmen	tegmen, īnis n
thalamus	thalāmus, i m
thigh	femur, ōris n
ventricle	vertricŭlus, i m

Lesson 9

NOMINATIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

§ 50. Nominative plural endings of nouns and adjectives

The Nominative plural forms for both nouns and adjectives are formed by adding the Nominative plural endings to their stem. These endings, particularly in

the 2nd, 3rd and 4th declensions, depend on the gender and declension of nouns and adjectives, as shown in this table:

Declension	Gender	Nominative Singular	Stem	Nominative Plural endings	Nominative Plural Form
I	f	vertebra thoracica	vertebr- thoracic-	-ae	vertebrae thoracicae
II	m	sulcus dexter	sulc- dextr-	-i	sulci dextri
	n	septum latum ganglion otīcum	sept- lat- gangli- otic-	-a	septa lata ganglia otīca
III	m	homo sapiens	homin- sapien-	-es	homīnes sapientes
	f	pars commūnis	part- commun-	es	partes commūnes
	n	rete	ret-	-ia	retia
		mirabile	mirabil-		mirabilia
		foramen anterior	foramin- anterior-	-a	foramīna anteriora
IV	m	processus	process-	-us	processus
	n	cornu	corn-	-ua	cornua
V	f	facies	faci-	-es	facies

As we can observe, only neutral nouns of the 3rd declension have two variants. The following rules of their ending differentiation are to be memo- rized.

1. Neutral nouns with the endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in the Nominative singular get the ending **-ia**:

animal (Nom. sing.) – animalia (Nom. plur.)

pulvīnar (Nom. sing.) – pulvinaria (Nom. plur.)

rete (Nom. sing.) – retia (Nom. plur.)

2. Neutral adjectives of the 3rd declension except for adjectives in the comparative form get the ending **-ia**:

Dictionary form	Neutral form	Stem	Nominative Plural form
acer, cris, cre	acre	acr-	acria
celer, ěris, ěre	celěre	celěr-	celeria
frontālis, e	frontāle	frontāl-	frontālia
brevis, e	breve	brev-	brevia
sapiens, ntis	sapiens	sapient-	sapientia
impar, āris	impar	impar-	imparia
simplex, ěcis	simplex	simplěc-	simplěcia

Nouns which don't belong to the first point of the shown above rule as well as adjectives in the comparative form get the ending **-a** in the Nominative plural:

foramen superius (sing.) – *foramīna superiōra* (plur.)

caput minus (sing.) – *capīta minōra* (plur.)

§ 51. Abbreviations of Nominative plural

forms used in anatomical terms

A certain number of nouns in the anatomical terms is used in the shortened forms. You have to memorize these abbreviations:

Singular form		Plural form	
Full form	Abbreviation	Full form	Abbreviation
arteria	A.	arteriae	Aa.
bursa	B.	bursae	Bb.
forāmen	F.	foramīna	Forr.
ganglion	Gangl.	ganglia	Gangll.
glandŭla	Gl.	glandŭlae	Gll.
ligamentum	Lig.	ligamenta	Ligg.
musculŭs	M.	musculi	Mm.

nervus	N.	nervi	Nn.
nucleus	Nucl.	nuclei	Nucll.
ramus	R.	rami	Rr.
vagīna	Vag.	vagīnae	Vagg.
vena	V.	venae	Vv.

§ 52. Exercises.

1. Write down the dictionary form, translate into Latin and then make up the Nominative plural of each word combination:

cervical surface; coccygeal horn; greater palatine canal; impar ganglion; inferior nuchal line; jugular foramen; posterior tubercle; rete mirabile; sphenoidal process; superior nasal meatus; temporal fossa; thoracic region; tympanic cavity; zygomatic bone

2. Write down the dictionary form and translate into English:

Aa. ciliāres posteriōres breves; cartilagīnes laryngis; Forr. palatīna minōra; Gangll. pelvīca; Gll. thyroideae accessoriae; impessiōnes digitātae seu juga cerebralia; labia oris; Ligg. collateralia; Mm. rotatōres cervīcis; Nn. splanchnīci sacrāles; nomīna anatomīca; Nucll. vestibulāres; orgāna oculi accessoria; ossa cranii; partes corpōris humāni; plicae transversae recti; radīces craniāles; rami capsulae internae; rami cardiāci thoracīci; Rr. dorsāles linguae; regiōnes membri superiōris; systemāta genitalia masculīnum et feminīnum; Vv. hepaticae dextrae; Vv. temporāles profundae

3. Write down the dictionary form and translate into Latin:

anterior and posterior divisions; auditory ossicles; blood vessels of retina; borders of the nail; cavities of the body; costal notches; cranial nerves and sutures; eyebrows and eyelashes; general terms; incisive canals; joints of pelvic girdle; lesser palatine foramina; minor salivary glands; muscular branches of common fibular (peroneal) nerve; muscles of back proper; permanent teeth; planes, lines and

regions; posterior ethmoidal cells; renal pyramids; true and false ribs; transverse folds of rectum; roots, trunks and cords of brachial plexus

§ 53. Vocabulary to lesson 9

I. Latin – English vocabulary

1st declension

femīna, ae f	woman
plica, ae f	fold
sutūra, ae f	suture

2nd declension

jugum, i n	yoke
ramus, i m	branch
rectum, i n	rectum
vir, i m	man

3rd declension

impressio, ōnis f	impression
nomen, ĩnis n	name

Adjectives of the 1st group

anatomīcus, a, um	anatomical
digitātus, a, um	digitate
humānus, a, um	human
otīcus, a, um	otic

Adjectives of the 2nd group

alveolāris, e	alveolar
cerebrālis, e	cerebral
collaterālis, e	collateral

dorsālis, e
genitālis, e

dorsal
genital

II. English - Latin glossary

brachial	brachiālis, e
branch	ramus, i m
cell	cellūla, ae f
cord	fascicūlus, i m
division	divisio, ōnis f
eyebrow	supercilium, i n
eyelash	cilium, i n
false	spurius, a, um
fibular (= peroneal)	fibulāris (= peronēus, a, um)
fold	plica, ae
fossa	fossa, ae f
general	generālis, e
girdle	cingūlum, i n
jugular	jugulāris, e
impar	impar, āris
incisive	incisīvus, a, um
line	linea, ae f
mirabile	mirābilis, e
muscular	musculāris, e
notch	incisūra, ae f
ossicle	ossicūlum, i n
permanent	permānens, ntis
plane	planum, i n
proper	proprius, a, um

retina	retīna, ae f
salivary	salivarius, a. um
suture	sutūra, ae f
true	verus, a, um
trunk	truncus, i m
term	termīnus, i m
zygomatic	zygomatīcus, a, um

Lesson 10

GENITIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

§ 54. Genitive plural endings of nouns and adjectives

Both nouns and adjectives get the Genitive plural forms by adding the Genitive plural endings to their stem depending mostly on noun and adjective declension, as one may see in the following table:

Declension	Gender	Nominative singular	Stems	Genitive plural endings	Genitive plural forms
I	f	vertēbra	vertebr-	-ārum	vertebrārum
		thoracīca	thoracic-		thoracicārum
II	m	sulcus	sulc-	-ōrum	sulcōrum
		dexter	dextr-		dextrōrum
	n	ganglion	gangl-		gangliōrum
		otīcum	otic-		oticōrum
	m	canālis	canal-		canalium
		brevis	brev-		brevium
		dens	dent-		dentium

III	f	permanens	permanent-	-ium	permanentium	
		pars	part-		partium	
		laterālis	lateral-		lateralium	
		vertebrāle	vertebral-		vertebralium	
		os	oss-		ossium	
		simplex	simplic-		simplicium	
		rete	ret-		retium	
	n	articulāre	articular-	articularium		
		m	margo	margin-	-um	margīnum
			anterior	anterior-		anteriōrum
f	articulatio	articulation-	articulatiōnum			
	inferior	inferior-	inferiōrum			
n	forāmen	foramin-	foramīnum			
	majus	major-	majōrum			
IV	m	arcus	arc-	-uum		arcuum
	n	cornu	corn-			cornuum
V	f	facies	faci-	-ērum		faciērum

As we can see, masculine, feminine and neutral nouns and adjectives of the third declension have two variants of the endings.

The ending **-ium** is added to the stems of:

1. Parisyllaba, i. e. the masculine and feminine nouns which have equal number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive: canālis, is m *canal*; basis, is f *base*.
2. Masculine, feminine and neutral nouns, if their stem ends with two consonants: dens, dentis m *tooth*; pars, partis f *part*; os, ossis n *bone*.
3. Neutral nouns with the endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in the Nominative singular: aņīmal, ālis n *animal*; calcar, āris n *calcar (spur)*; rete, is n *net, network*
4. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the positive degree,

see in the table above the adjectives articulāris, e articular; brevis, e short; laterālis, e lateral; permanens, ntis permanent; simplex, ĩcis simple.

The ending **-um** is added to the stems of:

1. All nouns which don't belong to the three first groups of the explained above rules, see, e. g., in the table the nouns margo, ĩnis m *border*; articulatio, ōnis f *joint*; forāmen, ĩnis n *opening*.

2. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the comparative degree, see in the table the adjectives anterior, ius *anterior*; inferior, ius *upper*; major, jus *major*, *larger*, *greater*.

Some Latin nouns are used only in plural and their dictionary forms are accordingly represented in the Nominative and Genitive plural: fauces, faucium f fauces; species, ērum (speciērum) f species.

Attention! The noun vas, vasis n *in singular* belongs to the third declension, but *in plural* – to the second one. Compare: *nervi vasis* – nerves of a vessel, but *nervi vasōrum* – nerves of the vessels.

§ 55. Exercises

1. Write down the dictionary form of each word and make up Genitive plural form of each word combination:

anterior tubercle; costal process; floating rib; greater wing; internal base; left spur; lesser opening; lesser sublingual duct; longitudinal ligament; long root; permanent tooth; posterior surface; respiratory region; right crest; sacral horn; short muscle; simple joint; venous network; vertebral canal

2. Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:

ligamenta ossiculōrum auditoriōrum; medulla ossium flava et rubra; muscūli arrectōres pilōrum; muscūli palati et faucium; nervi vasōrum lymphaticōrum; ostia venārum pulmonalium; plexus cavernōsi conchārum; processus accessorius vertebrārum lumbalium; situs viscērum inversus; vagīnae fibrōsae digitōrum manus

3. Give the dictionary form and translate into Latin:

arteries of lower limbs; curvature of the stomach walls; dividing walls of the frontal sinuses; grooves for extensor muscle tendons; heads of the true, false and floating ribs; muscles of auditory ossicles; muscles of soft palate and faucium; nerves and vessels of vessels; nodules of semilunar cusps; sinuses of the venae cavae (Gen. plur.!); surface of the permanent teeth; tubercles of thoracic vertebrae (Gen. plur.!)

§ 56. Vocabulary to lesson 10

I. Latin – English vocabulary

Nouns of the 1st declension

medulla, ae f	medulla, marrow (bone)
vagīna, ae f (of muscle)	sheath

Nouns of the 2nd declension

ossicŭlum, i n	ossicle
ostium, i n	opening
palātum, i n	palate
pilus, i m	hair

Nouns of the 3rd declension

m. arrector, oris m	arrector
fauces, i um f	fauces
viscus, ěris n; usually Plur. viscĕra, um n	viscera, inner organs

Nouns of the 4th declension

manus, us f	hand
situs, us m	site

Adjectives of the 1st group

auditorius, a, um	auditory
cavernōsus, a, um	cavernous
fibrōsus, a, um	fibrous
flavus, a, um	yellow
inversus, a, um	inverse
ruber, bra, brum	red

Adjectives of the 2nd group

lumbālis, e	lumbar
pulmonālis, e	pulmonary

II. English – Latin glossary

cavae	cavus, a, um
curvature	curvatūra, ae f
cuspid	valvūla, ae f
extensor (unbending muscle)	m. extensor, ōris m
false	falsus, a, um
floating	fluctuans, ntis
limb	membrum, i n
nodule	nodūlus, i n
ossicle	ossicūlum, i n
palate	palātum, i n
permanent	permānens, ntis
respiratory	respiratorius, a um
semilunar	semilunāris, e
soft	mollis, e
spur	calcar, āris n
stomach	gaster, tris f
true	verus, a, um
venae	vena, ae f
wall	paries, ētis m

Lesson 11

ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND
ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

§ 57. Accusative singular and plural endings

The Latin Accusative case reflects the direct object by answering the questions «Whom? What?». In this function it corresponds to the Russian case called «Винительный» or in German – to the case Akkusativ.

Both nouns masculine and feminine as well as adjectives get the Accusative forms by adding the corresponding endings to their stem, as one may see in the table below. Neutral nouns and adjectives have no special Accusative endings: Accusative singular form corresponds to the form of the Nominative singular and the Accusative plural form – to the form of the Nominative plural:

Dec- len- sion	Gen- der	Nominative singular	Acc.sing. ending	Accusative singular form	Acc.pl. ending	Accusative plural form
I	f	vena cava	-am	venam cavam	-as	venas cavas
II	m	ramus dexter sulcus palatīnus	-um	ramum dextrum sulcum palatīnum	-os	ramos dextros sulcos palatīnos
	n	ganglion otīcum septum longum	=Nom. sing.	ganglion otīcum septum longum	=Nom. pl.(-a)	ganglia otīca septa longa
III	m	margo anterior canālis nutriens	-em	margīnem anteriorē canālem nutrientem	-es	margīnes anteriorēs; canāles nutrientes
	f	pars laterālis basis simplex pelvis major	-em (-im)	partem laterālem basim	-es	partes laterāles bases simplices pelves majōres

				simplicem pelvim majorem		
	n	rete capillare crus posterius	=Nom. sing.	rete capillare crus posterius	=Nom. pl. (-a,-ia)	retia capillaria crura posteriōra
IV	m	processus	-um	processum	-us	processus
	n	cornu	=Nom. sing.	cornu	=Nom. pl. (-ua)	cornua
V	f	facies	-em	faciem	-es	facies

Some ending variants are seen in the third declension. Nouns in the Accusative singular can get endings **-im** or **-em**. The ending **-im** should have:

1. Nouns with the ending **-sis** in the Nominative singular:

basis, is f *basis* – basim dosis, is f *dose* – dosim

2. Nouns pelvis, is f *pelvis* – pelvim; febris, is f *fever* – febrim; tussis, is f *cough* – tussim

There are two ending variants in the Genitive plural, too. The ending **-ium** get:

1. Nouns parisyllaba of masculine and feminine gender:

basis, sis f – basium canālis, is f – canalium

2. Nouns of the neutral gender with endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in Nominative singular:

animālis, ālis n (*animal*) – animalium calcar, āris n (*spur*) – calcarium

rete, is n (*net, network*) – retium

3. Nouns of masculine, feminine and neutral gender the stem of which ends with two consonants:

dens, dentis f (*tooth*) – dentium

pars, partis f (*part*) – partium

os, ossis n (*bone*) – ossium

4. Adjectives of the third declension of all gender forms being in the positive form:

brevis, e (*short*) – brevium permānens, ntis (*permanent*) – permanentium
simplex, ĩcis (*simple*) – simplicium

Nouns not belonging to the first three points as well as adjectives in the comparative form get the ending –um:

pes, pedis m (*leg*) – pedum; articulatio, ōnis f (*joint*) – articulatiōnum;
forāmen, ĩnis n (*opening*) – foramīnum; anterior, ius (*anterior*) – anteriōrum

§ 58. Prepositions used with the Accusative

Prepo- sition	Meaning	Examples	Translation
ad	1) to, toward 2) for 3) during, in	ad nervum trigemīnum ad usum externum ad morbum hypertonicum	to the trigeminal nerve for the external use in the hypertonic disease
ante	before, in front of	ante operatiōnem ante pulmōnem dextrum	before the operation in front of the right lung
circum	(a)round	circum liēnem	around the spleen
contra	for	contra febrim	for the fever
in	in, into, on (when answering the question «where to?», Russian «куда?»)	in oesophāgum in partem dextram in canālem longum	into the oesophagus on the right part in the long canal
infra	below, under	infra cor	below (under) the heart
inter	among, between	inter vasa manus inter duo ossa	among the vessels of the hand between two bones

Prepo- sition	Meaning	Examples	Translation
intra	inside	intra thorācem	inside the thorax
per	1) through, via 2) by (means of)	per canālem optīcum per ligamenta	through (via) the optic canal by (means of) the ligaments
post	after, behind	post operationem post costam	behind the rib after the operation
sub	under (when answering the question «where to?», Russian «куда?»)	sub scapūlam dextram sub ganglion sub- mandibulāre	under the right shoulder blade under the submandibular ganglion
super, supra	above	super (supra) margīnem sinistrum supra (super) labium superius	above the left margin above the upper lip

§ 59. Exercises.

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, make up forms of the Nominative singular, Accusative singular and plural:

anterior margin; ascending artery; external base; frontal surface; greater pelvis; hepatic duct; left lung; lesser horn; lymphatic vessel; nasal bone; right part; respiratory system; short nerve; vertebral canal

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into English:

aditus ad antrum; ante operationem difficilem; ante pulmonem dextrum; circum oculum dextrum; in canalem dentis incisivi; in parietem gastris; inter ossa; intra venam facialem; in musculos laryngis; per os; per pelvim minorem; per rectum; post partum; rami ad medullam oblongatam; sub cor; sub ligamenta flava

3. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate into Latin:

above the left lung; after death; among the incisors; before and after childbirth; between the leg bones; by means of the long canal; for cough; for internal (external) use; into the deep vein; inside the stomach artery; on the superior surface; round the mouth; through the abdomen; under the right kidney; via the common carotid artery

§ 60. Vocabulary to lesson 11

I. Latin – English vocabulary

Prepositions used with the Accusative

ad	1) to 2) for 3) during
ante	ante
circum	around, round
contra	against
in (to the question “where to?”, Russian “куда?”)	in, into, on
infra	below, under
intra	among, between (two objects)
per	through, via 2) by (means of)
post	after (time), behind (place)
sub (to the question “where to?”, Russian “куда?”)	under
super, supra	above, over

Other words

aditus, us m	aditus
antrum, i n	antrum, cave
auricularis, e	auriculare
difficilis, e	difficult
flavus, a, um	yellow
medulla, ae f	medulla
oblongatus, a, um	oblongata (medulla)

II. English – Latin vocabulary

Prepositions

above	super, supra
after	post
among (more than two objects)	inter
around	circum
before	ante
behind	post
between (two objects)	inter
by (means of)	per
during	ad
for	ad
in	1) in (to the question “where to?”) 2) ad
in front of	ante
inside	intra
into	in (to the question “where to?”)
on	in (to the question “where to?”)
round	see <i>around</i>
to	ad

through	per
under	infra, sub (to the question “where to?”)
Other words	
ascending	ascendens, ntis
childbirth	partus, us m
cough	tussis, is f
death	mors, mortis f
leg	pes, pedis m
operation	operatio, ōnis f
use	usus, us m

Lesson 12

ABLATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE

§ 61. Ablative and its formation

Ablative is the Latin case reflecting different circumstances and conditions which characterize the indirect object (mood of the action, time, place, reason and so on).

Both nouns and adjectives get the Ablative forms by adding the corresponding endings to their stems, as one may see in the table below:

Dec- len- sion	Gen- der	Nominative singular	Abl. sing. ending	Ablative singular form	Abl. plur. ending	Ablative plural form
I	f	vena cava	-ā	vena cava	-is	venis cavis
II	m	ramus dexter sulcus palatīnus	-o	ramo dextro sulco palatīno	-is	ramis dextris sulcis palatīnis

	n	ganglion oticum septum longum		ganglio otico septo longo		gangliis oticis septis longis
III	m	margo anterior canālis nutriens		margīne anteriōre canāle nutrienti	-ībus	marginībus anteriorībus canalībus nutrientībus
	f	pars laterālis basis simplex	-e (-i)	parte laterāli basi simplīci		partībus lateralībus basībus simplicībus
	n	rete capillāre crus posterius		reti capillāri crure posteriōre		retībus capillarībus crurībus posteriorībus
IV	m	processus	-u	processu	-ībus	processībus
	n	cornu	-u	cornu		cornībus
V	f	facies	-e	facie	-ēbus	faciēbus

Some ending variants are seen in the third declension. Nouns and adjectives in the Ablative singular can get endings **-e** or **-i**.

The ending **-i** is added to the stem of:

1. Neutral nouns with the endings **-al**, **-ar**, **-e** in the Nominative singular (we have already mentioned these nouns in the previous lessons): *animālis* n – *animālī*; *calcar*, *āris* n – *calcārī*; *rete*, *is* n – *reti*.

2. Four feminine nouns: *pelvis*, *is* f *pelvis* – *pelvi*; *febris*, *is* f *fever* – *febri*; *tussis*, *is* f *cough* – *tussi*.

3. Feminine nouns with the ending **-sis**: *basis*, *is* f *base* – *basi*.

4. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the positive degree as well as participles: brevis, e – brevi; capillāris, e – capillāri; simplex, ĩcis – simplĭci; fluctuans, ntis – fluctuanti.

The ending **-e** is added to the stem of:

1. All nouns which don't belong to the first three groups of the explained above rules, – see, e. g., in the table the nouns canālis, margo, pars, crus.

2. Masculine, feminine and neutral adjectives in the comparative degree, – see in the table the adjective anterior, ius and posterior, ius.

§ 62. Prepositions used with the Ablative

Proposition	Meaning	Examples	Translation
a, ab (before a vowel)	from	a sulco rhināli ab axe optĭco	from rhinal sulcus from optical axis
cum	with	cum nervo faciāli cum feбри continua	with facial nerve with continued fever
de	about	de ossĭbus cranii	about the skull bones
e (ex)	1) from (about the movement from within) 2) of, from (about material)	e canāle sacrāli e cavitāte abdomĭnis ex fructĭbus Rosae e fibris elastĭcis	from the sacral canal from the abdomen cavity of dog-rose fruits from elastic fibers
in	(when answering the question “where?”) in, on	in cavitāte pleurāli in facie unguis	in the pleural cavity on the nail surface
pro	for	pro reti venōso guttae pro oculis	for venous network drops for eyes
sine	without	sine pancreāte accessorio	without accessory pancreas

Proposition	Meaning	Examples	Translation
		sine dentibus serotinis	without wisdom teeth
sub	(when answering the question “where?”) under	sub cute capitis sub narcōsi locāli	under the skin of head under a local anesthesia

§ 63. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, make up the forms of the Ablative singular and plural:

accessory pancreas; continued fever; bony tissue; caninetooth; floating rib; inner base; left canal; lesser pelvis; long spur; lymphatic vessel; right region; sacral horn; short nerve; simple joint

2. Give the dictionary form of each word; translate from Latin into English:

ab angulo inferiōre scapulae; a crista capitis costae; cum febris continua; de structura partium corporis humani; de terminis generalibus; glandulae sine ductibus; in facie unguis; in regionibus membri superioris; pro reti venoso; sanguis ex vena pro analysi; sub musculis facialibus; sub tunica musculari; tunica e textu connectivo

3. Give the dictionary form of each word; translate from English into Latin:

about the abdominal muscles; a medicine from the forest plants; for external use; for nervous system; from the head to the feet; from the surface of knee; in the heart artery; in the thoracic vein; on the nose skin; under a local (general) anesthesia; with a wandering kidney; without upper wisdom teeth

§ 64. Vocabulary to lesson 12

Latin – English vocabulary

Prepositions used with the Ablative

a, ab

from

cum	with
de	about, of
e, ex	from, of
in (when answering the question “where?”)	in, on
pro	for
sine	without
sub (when answering the question “where?”)	under

Other words

connectīvus, a, um	connective
continuus, a, um	continued
faciālis, e	facial
generālis, e	general
glandŭla, ae f	gland
humānus, a, um	human
musculāris, e	muscular
scapŭla, ae f	scapula
structŭra, ae f	structure
termīnus, i m	term
tunīca, ae f	layer, coat

English – Latin vocabulary

anesthesia	anaesthesia, ae f
continued	continuus, a, um
forest	silvestris, e
general	generālis, e
local	locālis, e

medicine	medicamentum, i n
plant	planta, ae f
wandering	migrans, ntis

Lesson 13

PREFIXES IN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

§ 65. Prefixation in the word building

Prefixation is the way of word building by adding prefixes to the stem of nouns or adjectives. As a result new meanings of the word are received in which any additional circumstances characteristic of the noun or adjective arise, mainly in respect of space if it concerns anatomical terms, e. g.:

brachium, i n (brachium) + ante (before) → antebrachium, i n – antebrachium

cervicālis, e (cervical) + endo (within) → endocervicālis, e – endocervical

cutaneus, a, um (cutaneous) + sub (under) → subcutaneous, a, um – subcutaneous

§ 66. Prefixes in anatomical terminology

Both Greek and Latin prefixes are widely used in anatomical terms. Some of them have the same meaning and in these cases choosing the prefix depends only on tradition of using this or that word in a certain term. In other cases, Greek and Latin prefixes don't duplicate the meaning of each other. According to this connection, we place Greek and Latin prefixes in two tables.

Greek and Latin prefixes with identical meaning

Meaning	Greek prefix	Latin prefix	Latin examples and English equivalents
above – under			
above, over	epi-	super- supra-	epigastrium, i n <i>epigastrium</i> superficiālis, e <i>superficial</i> suprarenālis, e <i>suprarenal</i>
below, under	hypo-	infra- sub-	hypoglossus, a um <i>hypoglossal</i> infraorbitālis, e <i>infraorbital</i> sublinguālis, e <i>sublingual</i>
before - behind			
after, behind	meta-	post-, retro-	metatarsus, i m <i>metatarsus</i> postcavālis, e <i>postcaval</i> retromandibulāris, e <i>retromandibular</i>
inside - outside			
within	en-, endo-	intra-	encephālon, i n <i>brain</i> endocervicālis, e <i>endocervical</i> intracellularis, e <i>intracellular</i>
outside, of	ecto-, exo-	extra	ectoderma, ātis n <i>ectoderm</i> exoskelēton, i n <i>exoskeleton</i> extracellulāris, e <i>extracellular</i>
between or the middle part			
between or the middle part	dia-, di-, meso-, mes-	inter-	diastēma, ātis n <i>diastema</i> mesoderma, ātis n <i>mesoderm</i> mesencephālon, i n <i>mesencephalon, the midbrain</i> intercostālis, e <i>intrecostal</i>
together, joined			
together, joined	syn- sym-	col-, com-, con-, cor-	synostōsis, is f <i>synostosis</i> symphŷsis, is f <i>symphysis</i> commissūra, ae f <i>commissure</i>

Meaning	Greek prefix	Latin prefix	Latin examples and English equivalents
			collaterālis, e <i>collateral</i> connectīvus, a, um <i>connective</i> m.corrugātor, ōris m <i>corrugator</i>
not, without			
absence, denying	a-, an- (before a vowel)	in-, im-, ir-	azygos (undeclinable) <i>azygous</i> anonŷmus, a, um <i>innominate</i> insensibīlis, e <i>insensible</i> ; impar, āris <i>impar</i> irregulāris, e <i>irregular</i>
against, opposite			
against, opposite	anti-	contra-	antitrāgus, i m <i>antitragus</i> anticorpus, ōris n <i>antibody</i> contralaterālis, e <i>contralateral</i>
from, away from			
away from	apo-	a-, ab-	apocrīnus, a, um <i>apocrine</i> apophŷsis, is f <i>apophysis</i> m. abductor, ōris m <i>abductor</i>
around, round			
around	peri-	circum-	pericardium, i n <i>pericardium</i> circumorālis, e <i>circumoral</i>
through			
through	dia-	per-	diaphragma, ātis n <i>diaphragm</i> perspiratio, ōnis f <i>perspiration</i>
out of			
out, out of	ec-, ex-	e-, ex-	eccrīnus, a, um <i>eccrine</i> effērens, ntis <i>efferent</i> exostōsis, is f <i>exostosis</i> excretorius, a, um <i>excretory</i>

Greek and Latin prefixes without mutual semantic duplication

Greek prefix	Latin prefix	Meaning	Latin examples and English equivalents
—	ad-, ac-, af-, ap-	adition, movement nearer	adrenālis, e <i>adrenal</i> accessorius, a, um <i>accessory</i> affērens, ntis <i>afferent</i> appendix, ĩcis f <i>appendix</i>
—	de-	1. removing 2. downward	m. detrūsor, ōris m <i>detrusor</i> m. depressor, ōris m <i>depressor</i>
—	dis-, dif-, di-	spreading	disseminātus, a, um <i>disseminated</i> diffūsus, a, um <i>diffuse</i> m. dilatator, ōris m <i>dilator</i>
—	in-, im-	moving inward	infundibūlum, i n <i>infundibulum</i> impressio, ōnis f <i>impression</i>
—	re-	again or repeated action	reactio, ōnis f <i>reaction</i> recessus, us m <i>recessus, recess</i> reuniens, ntis <i>reunient</i>
para-	—	beside, near	paracervix, ĩcis f <i>paracervix</i> paranasālis, e <i>paranasal</i>

§ 67. Greek and Latin numerals as prefixes

Meaning	Greek prefix	Latin prefix	Latin examples and English equivalents
one	mono-	uni-	mononucleāris, e <i>mononuclear</i> unicellulāris, e <i>unicellular</i>
two	di-	bi-	digastrĭcus, a um <i>digastric</i> bifurcatio, ōnis f <i>bifurcation</i>
three	tri-	tri-	trigōnum, i n <i>trigonum, triangle, trigone</i>

			trigemīnus, a, um <i>trigeminus</i>
four	tetra-	quadri-	tetrāpus, ōdos <i>tetrapus</i> quadriceps, ipītis <i>quadriceps</i>
half	hemi-	semi-	hemispherium, i n <i>hemisphere</i> semicanālis, is m <i>semicanal</i>

§ 68. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into English taking into consideration the meaning of prefixes:

adhesio interthalamīca; apparātus respiratorius seu systēma respiratorium; circumferentia articulāris; dentes decidui; eminentia collaterālis; fibrae periventriculāres; glandūla parotidea accessoria; impressio suprarenālis; lamella circumferentiālis externa; ligamenta metacarpalia interossea; mesocōlon transversum; muscūlus bipennātus; ossa metatarsi; plexus submucōsus; processus intrajugulāris; sectiōnes mesencephalīci; spatium retropharyngēum; substantia perforāta interpedunculāris; symphŷsis intervertebrālis; synchondrōsis intraocipitālis; tractus paraventriculohypophysīālis; tragus et antitrāgus auriculāe; trigōnum cervicāle anterius; vena retromandibulāris,

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and fill in the gaps with the most suitable Latin prefixes using, if necessary, *Atlas of Human Anatomy*:

arteria ...currens; arteria ...flexa scapūlae; canālis ...circulāris; ligamenta ...capsularia; muscūlus ...pressor angūli oris; muscūlus ...pennātus; nervus ...dūcens; orgāna oculi accessoria; recessus ...hepatīci; vas sanguineum ...fōrans; zona ...certa.

3. Give the dictionary form of each word and fill in the gaps with the most suitable Greek prefixes using, if necessary, *Atlas of Human Anatomy*:

...cōlon descendens; ...condŷlus laterālis; fossa ...helīcis; ...gōnum habenūlae ...encephāli; glandūla ...statīca; glandūlae ...crinae; muscūlus ...

gastricus; plexus ...gastricus; recessus ...tympanicus; regio ...chondriaca; ...
spherium cerebelli; spatium ...pharyngem; tractus ...encephalicus nervi trigemini.

4. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:

accessory pancreatic duct; common interosseous artery; external intercostal
muscles; fascia of forearm; interclavicular ligament; intermandibular suture;
interlobar artery; intraglandular lymphatic node; interosseal nerves of leg;
parapharyngeal space; paravesical fossa; preoccipital notch; semilunar folds of
colon; submandibular gland; supraorbital veins; suprapleural membrane.

§ 69. Vocabulary to lesson 13

I. Latin-English glossary

Nouns of the 1st declension

auricula, ae f	auricle; pinna
circumferentia, ae f	circumference
eminentia, ae f	eminence
lamella, ae f	lamella

Nouns of the 2nd declension

antebrachium, i n	antebrachium, forearm
antitragus, i m	antitragus
diencephalon, i n	diencephalons
hemispherium, i n	hemisphere
mesencephalon, i n	mesencephalon
mesocolon, i n	mesocolon
metatarsus, i m	metatarsus
spatium, i n	space

extracapsulāris	extracapsular
interpedunculāris, e	interpeduncular
intervertebrālis, e	intervertebral
intrajugulāris, e	intrajugular
intraoccipitālis, e	intraoccipital
metacarpālis, e	metacarpal
pancreatīcus, a, um	pancreatic
paraventriculohypophysiālis, e	paraventriculohypophysial
periventriculāris, e	periventricular
retromandibulāris, e	retromandibular
semicirculāris, e	semicircular
suprarenālis, e	suprarenal

II. English –Latin vocabulary

forearm	antebrachium, i n
interclavicular	interclaviculāris, e
interlobar	interlobāris, e
intermandibular	intermandibulāris, e
interosseous	interosseus, a, um
intercostal	intercostālis, e
intraglandular	intraglandulāris, e
parapharyngeal	parapharyngeālis, e
paravesical	paravesicālis, e
preoccipital	preoccipitālis, e
semilunar	semilunāris, e
submandibular	submandibulāris, e
supraorbital	supraorbitālis, e
suprapleural	– suprapleurālis, e

§ 70. Model (sample) of the final test in anatomical terminology

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into English:

- 1) paries anterior gastris 2) vestibulum oris 3) margo liber unguis 4) pecten
ossis pubis 5) partes corporis humani 6) plexus cavernosi conchārum
7) ostia venarum pulmonalium

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:

- 1) deep vein of the right leg 2) teres minor muscle 3) groove for inferior
petrosal sinus 4) surface of incisor tooth 5) planes, lines and regions 6) heads of the
true, false and floating ribs 7) eyebrows and eyelashes

3. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:

- 1) by means of the long canal 2) through the abdomen 3) with a wandering
kidney 4) for nervous system 5) glands without ducts

To cope with this final test you have to review (revise) thoroughly every home task because all the terms of this test have been taken from your exercises. But the most effective way to success is your thorough learning and preparation for every lesson during your university studies.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A	ad (Acc.) 1) to 2) for 3) during
a, ab (Abl) from	adhesio, ōnis f adhesion
accessorius, a, um accessory	adipōsus, a, um fat
acusticus, a, um auditory	aditus, us m aditus

ala, ae f wing	atlas, ntis m atlas (the first cervical vertebra)
alāris, e alar	auditorius, a, um auditory
alveolāris, e alveolar	auriculā, ae f auricle; pinna
ampullāris, e ampullary	auriculāris, e auricular
analŷsis, is f analysis	auris, is f ear
anatomīcus, a, um anatomical	axis, is m axis
angŭlus, i m angle	B
ante (Acc.) 1) before (time) 2) in front of (place)	basis, is f base
antebrachium, i n antebrachium, forearm	biliāris, e (=felleus, a, um) gall (+noun)
anterior, ius anterior	bipennātus, a, um bipennate
antihēlix, ĭcis f; anthēlix, ĭcis f antihelix (anthelix)	biventer, tra, trum two-bellied
antitrāgus, i m antitragus	brachium, i n arm
antrum, i n antrum, cave	brevis, e short
apex, ĭcis m apex, tip	bulbus, i m (ocŭli) eyeball
apparātus, us m apparatus	
appendix, ĭcis f appendix	
arachnoideus, a um arachnoid	
arbor, ōris f tree	
arbor vitae arbor vitae	
arcus, us m arch	
arteria, ae f artery	
arteriōsus, a um arterial	
articulāris, e articular	
articulatio, ōnis f joint	

C

cadāver, ěris n cadaver (dead body)
calicūlus, i m (gustatorius) bud
canālis, is m canal
cancer, cri m cancer
canīnus, a um (dens) canine (tooth)
capsūla, ae f capsule
caput, ĩtis n head
cardiācus, a, um cardiac
carotīcus, a, um carotid
cartilāgo, ĩnis f cartilage
cauda, ae f tail
cavernōsus, a, um cavernous
cavitas, ātis f cavity
celer, ěris, ěre rapid, quick (pulse)
cerebellum, i n cerebellum
cerebrālis, e cerebral
cervicālis, e cervical
cervix, ĩcis f cervix, neck
ciliāris, e ciliary
circum (Acc.) around, round
circumferentiālis, e
circumferential
circumferentia, ae f circumference
coccygēus, a, um coccygeal

coccyx, ŷgis m coccyx, coccygeal bone
cochleāris, e cochlear
collaterālis, e collateral
communīcans, ntis communicative
compositus, a, um complex
concha, ae f concha (shell-shaped hole)
connectīvus, a, um connective
continuus, a, um continued
contra (Acc.) against, for (cough)
cor, cordis n heart
cornu, us n horn, horn-shaped process
corpus, ōris n body
cortex, ĩcis m cortex (crust)
costa, ae f rib
costālis, e costal
craniālis, e cranial
cranium, i n skull
crista, ae f crest
crus, cruris n 1) shank, leg; 2) crus, limb (of auditory ossicle); 3) bundle (of myocardium)
cum (Abl.) with
cutis, is f skin
D

de (Abl.) about, of
deciduus, a, um deciduous
dens, dentis m tooth
dens canīnus canine tooth
dens deciduus deciduous tooth
dens incisīvus incisor tooth
dens molāris molar tooth
dens permānens permanent tooth
dens premolāris premolar tooth
dens sapientiae wisdom tooth
dentālis, e dental
dexter, tra, trum right
diamēter, tri f diameter
diaphragma, ātis n diaphragm
diencephālon, i n diencephalon
difficīlis, e difficult
digastrīcus, a um digastric
digitātus, a, um digitate
digītus, i m finger, toe
distālis, e distal
dorsālis, e dorsal
ductus, us m duct
duodēnum, i n duodenum
dura mater dura mater (the
 outermost meninx of the brain)
durus, a, um solid

E

e, ex (Abl.) from, of
eminentia, ae f eminence
encephālon i n brain
endocrīnus, a, um endocrine
et and
epitympanīcus, a, um epitympanic
externus, a, um external
extracapsulāris extracapsular
F
faciālis, e facial
facies, ēi f face, surface
fascia, ae f fascia
fascia lata fascia lata
fauces, ium f fauces
febris, is f fever
felleus, a, um (= biliaris, e) gall
 (+noun)
femīna, ae f woman
femur, ōris n femur, thigh (bone)
fibra, ae f fibre
fibrōsus, a, um fibrous
flavus, a, um yellow
forāmen, īnis n opening
fornix, ĩcis m fornix (vaginal);
 vault (of pharynx)
fossa, ae f fossa (a little hole)
frontālis, e frontal

G

ganglion, i n ganglion, nervous
node

gaster, tris f stomach

gemma, ae f bud

generālis, e general

genitālis, e genital

gingīva, ae f gingiva, gum

glandūla, ae f gland

glomus, ěris n a cluster of blood
vessels, glomus

gustatorius, a, um taste (+noun)

H

hemispherium, i n hemisphere

hepar, ātis n liver

hepatīcus, a, um

homo, ĩnis m man, a human

humānus, a, um human

humĕrus, i m humerus

hyoideus, a, um hyoid (bone)

hypochondriācus, a, um hypo-
chondriac

hypogastrīcus, a, um hypogastric

hypoglossus, a, um hypoglossal
(nerve)

I

iliācus, a, um iliac

impar, āris impar, unpaired

impressio, ōnis f impression

imus, a, um imus (ima), the lowest

**in (Acc., when answering the
question “where to?”, Russian
“куда?”)** in, into, on

**in (Abl., when answering the
question “where?”, Russian
“где?”)** in, on

incertus, a, um incerta (zona)

incisīvus, a, um (dens) incisor

incisūra, ae f incisure, slit or notch

inferior, ius inferior

infra (Acc.) below, under

inter (Acc.) among, between (two
objects)

interclaviculāris, e interclavicular

intercostālis, e intercostal

interlobāris, e interlobar

intermandibulāris, e intermandi-
bular

internus, a, um internal

interosseus, a, um interosseal,
interosseous

interpedunculāris, e
interpeduncular

interthalamīcus, a, um

interthalamic
intervertebrālis, e intervertebral
intra (Acc.) inside, in
intraglandulāris, e intraglandular
intrajugulāris, e intrajugular
intraoccipitālis, e intraoccipital
inversus, a, um inverse
iris, ĩdis f iris (central part of the
eye)

J

jugum, i n yoke

L

labium, i n lip

lamella, ae f lamella

larynx, yngis m larynx

latus, a, um broad

liber, ěra, ěrum free

ligamentum, i n ligament

lingua, ae f tongue

longissĭmus, a, um the longest

longitudinālis, e longitudinal

longus, a, um long

lumbālis, e lumbar

lymphaticus, a, um lymphatic

M

magnus, a, um large (vein),
magnus (m. adductor), great

(nerve)

major, jus major, greater, larger

mandibŭla, ae f lower jaw,
mandible

manus, us f hand

margo, ĩnis m margin, border

massĕter, ěris m see below m.
masseter

mastoideus, a, um mastoid

mater, tris f mater (cerebral coat)

maxilla, ae f maxilla, upper jaw

meātus, us m meatus (passage)

medulla, ae f medulla

membrum, i n limb

mesencephalicus, a, um

mesencephalic

mesencephālon, i n

mesencephalon

mesocōlon, i n mesocolon

metacarpālis, e metacarpal

metatarsus, i m metatarsus

minor, us minor, lesser, smaller

minĭmus, a, um the least, minimus

molāris, e (dens) molar (tooth)

musculāris, e muscular

muscŭlus, i m muscle

m. adductor, ōris m adductor

(bringing muscle)
m. arrector, ōris m arrector
 (muscle elevating hair)
m. levātor, ōris m levator
 (elevating muscle)
m. massēter, ēris m masseter
m. pronātor, ōris m pronator
 (muscle turning the forearm)
m. rotātor, ōris m rotātor
m. sphincter, ēris m sphincter
 (compressing muscle)
m. tensor, ōris m tensor (straining
 muscle)

N

nasālis, e nasal
nasus, i m nose
nervus, i m nerve
nucleus, i m nucleus
nomen, ĩnis n name

O

oblongātus, a, um rather long
occipitālis, e occipital
ocūlus, i m eye
operatio, ōnis f operation
orbĭta, ae f orbit
orgānon, i n organ
os, oris n mouth

os, ossis n bone
osseus, a, um bony
ossicūlum, i n ossicle
ostium, i n opening, orifice
otĭcus, a, um otic

P

palatĭnus, a, um palatine
palātum, i n palate
palpĕbra, ae f eyelid
pancreatĭcus, a, um pancreatic
parapharyngeālis, e
 parapharyngeal
paraventriculohypophysiālis, e
 paraventriculohypophysial
paravesicālis, e paravesical
paries, ětis m wall
parotideus, a, um parotid
pars, partis f part
partus, us m childbirth, delivery
parvus, a, um little, small
pecten, ĩnis m pecten (crest)
pelvĭcus, a, um pelvic
pelvis, is f pelvis
per (Acc.) 1) through, via 2) by
 (means of)
periventriculārĭs, e periventricular
permānens, entis (dens)

permanent (tooth)
pes, pedis m foot
petrōsus, a, um petrosal, stony
phalanx, ngis f phalanx
pius, a, um (mater) pia (mater)
pilus, i m hair
planta, ae f sole
plexus, us m plexus (network,
 chiefly of veins or nerves)
plica, ae f fold
porta, ae f porta (gate of the liver)
post (Acc.) after (time), behind
 (place)
posterior, ius posterior
premolāris, e (dens) premolar
 (tooth)
preoccipitālis, e preoccipital
pro (Abl.) for
processus, us m process
profundus, a, um deep
proprius, a, um proper
pubes, is f pubis
pulmo, ōnis m lung
pulmonālis, e pulmonary
pulsus, us m pulse
pupilla, ae f pupil
pyrāmis, ĩdis f pyramid

Q
quadrātus, a, um square, quadrate
 (muscle), quadratus (pronator)
R
radix, ĩcis f radix, root
ramus, i m branch
recessus, us m recess
rectum, i n rectum
regio, ōnis f region
ren, renis m kidney
renālis, e renal
respiratorius, a, um respiratory
rete, is n 1) rete (mirabile) 2)
 network (dorsal venous of hand)
retromandibulāris, e retro-
 mandibular
retropharyngēus, a, um
 retropharyngeal
rima, ae f fissure, opening
ruber, bra, brum red
S
sacrālis, e sacral
sanguis, ĩnis m blood
saphēnus, a, um saphenous
sapiens, ntis intelligent, clever
sapientia, ae f wisdom
scapŭla, ae f scapula, shoulder

blade
sectio, ōnis f section
segmentum, i n segment
semicirculāris, e semicircular
semilunāris, e semilunar
septum, i n septum, dividing wall
seu or
simplex, ĭcis simple
sine (Abl.) without
sinister, tra, trum left
sinus, us m sinus, hollow curvature
or cavity
situs, us m site
spatium, i n space
spina, ae f spine
spinālis, e spina
splanchnicus, a, um splanchnic
squama, ae f squamous part, scales
sternum, i n sternum, breast- bone
structūra, ae f structure
sub (Acc.,when answering the question “where to?», Russian “куда?”; Abl., when answering the question “where ? ”, Russian “где?”) under
sublinguālis e sublingual (except for nerve and bone)

submandibulāris, e submandibular
submucōsus, a, um submucous
substantia, ae f substance
sulcus, i m sulcus, furrow or groove
super, supra (Acc.) above, over
superficiālis, e superficial
superior, ius superior
supraorbital supraorbitālis, e
suprapleurālis, e suprapleural
suprarenālis, e suprarenal
suprēmus, a, um supreme, the highest
sutūra, ae f suture
symphŷsis, is f symphysis
synchondrōsis, is f synchondrosis
syndesmōsis, is f syndesmosis
systema, ātis n system
T
temporālis, e temporal
teres, ětis round (except for foramen)
terminatio, ōnis f ending
termīnus, i m term
textus, us m tissue
thoracicus, a, um thoracic
thorax, ācis m thorax, chest

thyr(e)oideus, a, um thyroid
tractus, us m tract
tragus, i m tragus
transverses, a, um transverse
trigōnum, i n trigone
tuber, ěris n tuber, large rounded swelling
tubercŭlum, i n tubercle, small rounded swelling
tuberositas, ātis f tuberosity
tumor, ōris m tumor (swelling, growth)
tunīca, ae f 1) layer, coat
2) membrane
tympanīcus, a, um tympanic

U

unguis, is m nail
utĕrus, i m uterus

V

vagīna, ae f (of muscle) vagina, sheath
vas, vasis n vessel
vena, ae f vein
venōsus, a, um venous
venter, tris m belly (of the muscle)
vermiformis, e vermiform
vertĕbra, ae f vertebra
vertebrālis, e vertebral
vesīca, ae f bladder
vestibulāris, e vestibular
vestibŭlum, i n vestibule
vir, i m man
viscus, ěris n; usually Plur.
viscĕra, um n viscera, inner organs
vita, ae f life
vomer, ěris m vomer

ENGLISH – LATIN VOCABULARY

A

abdomen abdōmen, ĩnis n
abdominal abdominālis, e
about de (Abl.)
above super, supra (Acc.)
accessory accessorius, a, um
adductor (musculū) adductor, ōris
m
after post (Acc.)
among (more than two objects)
inter (Acc.)
anesthesia anaesthesia, ae f
angle angŭlus, i m
anterior anterior, ius
aorta aorta, ae f
apex, tip apex, ĩcis m
arch arcus, us m
around circum (Acc.)
artery arteria, ae f
articular articulāris, e
ascending ascendens, ntis
auricular auricularis, e
atlas atlas, antis m
auditory auditorius, a, um
B
back dorsum, i n

base basis, is f
before ante (Acc.)
behind post (Acc.)
between (two objects) inter (Acc.)
blood sanguis, ĩnis m
body corpus, ōris n; glomus, eris n
(carotivcum)
bone os, ossis n
bony osseus, a, um
border margo, ĩnis m
brachial brachiālis, e
brain cerēbrum, i n
branch ramus, i m
breast mamma, ae f
broadest latissĭmus, a, um
bronchial bronchiālis, e
bursa (pouch, sac) bursa, ae f
by (means of) per (Acc.)
C
canal canālis, is m
cancer, cri m cancer
canine (tooth) canĭnus, a, um
(dens)
cardiac cardiācus, a, um
carotid carōtis, ĩdis (artery);
carotĭcus, a, um (canalis, sulcus,

tubercle)
cartilage cartilāgo, ĩnis f
cava, cavae cavus, a, um
cavity cavĭtas, ātis f
cell cellŭla, ae f
central centrālis, e
cerebellum cerebellum, I n
cervical cervicālis, e
cervix cervix, ĩcis f
chiasm chiasma, ātis n
childbirth partus, us m
ciliary ciliāris, e
coccygeal coccygēus, a, um
colon colon, i n
column columna, ae f
common commūnis, e
complex composĭtus, a, um
conjoint conjunctĭvus, a, um
constrictor (compressing muscle)
 musculŭs constrictor, ōris m
continued continuus, a, um
cord fascicŭlus, i m
costal costālis, e
cough tussis, is f
cranial craniālis, e
crest crista, ae f
crus crus, cruris n

culmen culmen, ĩnis n
curvature curvatŭra, ae f
cusp valvŭla, ae f
D
death mors, mortis f
deep profundus, a, um
dental dentālis, e
depressor (lowing muscle)
 musculus depressor, ōris m
diaphragm diaphragma, ātis n
digitus, digiti digĭtus, i m
distal distālis, e
dividing dividens, entis
division divisio, ōnis f
dorsal dorsālis, e
duct ductus, us m
during ad (Acc.)
E
ear auris, is f
endocrine endocrĭnus, a, um
epigastric epigastrĭcus, a, um
ethmoidal ethmoidālis, e
extensor (unbending muscle)
 musculus extensor, ōris m
external externus, a um
eyebrow supercilium, i n
eyelash cilium, i n

F

face facies, ēi f
false falsus, a, um
falx falx, falcis f
fascia fascia, ae f
fauces fauces, ium f (plur.)
fever febris, is f
fibrous fibrōsus, a, um
fibular (= peroneal) fibulāris (= peronēus, a, um)
fissure fissūra, ae f
flexor (bending muscle) musculus flexor, ōris m
floating fluctuans, ntis
fold plica, ae f
foot pes, pedis m
for ad (Acc.), pro (Abl.)
forāmen, ĩnis n opening
forearm antebrachium, i n
forest silvestris, e
forehead sincĭput, ĩtis n
fornix fornix, ĩcis m (vaginal)
forth quartus, a, um
fossa fossa, ae f
free liber, ěra, ěrum
from a, ab (Abl.); e, ex (Abl.)
frontal frontālis, e

G

gall bladder vesĭca fellea (= vesĭca biliāris)
ganglion, a nervous node
ganglion, i n
gastric gastrĭcus, a, um
general generālis, e
girdle cingŭlum, i n
gland glandŭla, ae f
gluteal glutēus, a, um
great magnus, a, um
greater major, jus
groove sulcus, i m

H

hallux hallux, ūcis m
hand manus, us f
head caput, ĩtis n
heart cor, cordis n
hepatic hepatĭcus, a, um
highest suprēmus, a, um
horn cornu, us n
hyoid hyoideus, a,

I

ima imus, a, um
impar impar, āris
in in (Acc., when answering the question “where to?”; Abl., when

answering the question

“where?”)

incisive incisīvus, a, um

incisor incisīvus, a um

incus incus, ūdis f

index (index finger) index, ĭcis m

inferior inferior, ius

in front of ante (Acc.)

inguinal inguinalis, e

inner internus, a, um

inside intra (Acc.)

intelligent sapiens, entis

interclavicular interclaviculāris, e

intercostal intercostālis, e

interlobar interlobāris, e

intermandibular

intermandibulāris, e

internal internus, a, um

interosseal interosseus, a, um

interosseous interosseus, a, um

into in (Acc., when answering the question “where to?”)

intraglandular intraglandulāris, e

iris iris, ĭdis f

J

joint articulatio, ōnis f

jugular jugulāris, e

K

kidney ren, renis m

knee genu, us n

L

lacrimal lacrimālis, e

lactiferous lactifērus, a, um

large magnus, a, um

larynx larynx, ngis m

lateral laterālis, e

latissimus latissīmus, a um

left sinister, tra, trum

leg pes, pedis m

lesser minor, us

ligament ligamentum, i n

limb membrum, i n

line linea, ae f

lingual linguālis, e

lip labium, i n

liver hepar, ātis n

local locālis, e

long longus, a, um

longest longissīmus, a, um

longitudinal longitudinālis, e

lower inferior, ius

lower jaw, mandible mandibŭla, ae f

lung pulmo, ōnis m

lymphatic lymphaticus, a, um

M

magnus, magnum magnus, a, um

major major, jus

man homo, ĩnis m

mandible mandibŭla, ae f

margin margo, ĩnis m

mastoid mastoideus, a, um

meatus meātus, us m

medial mediālis, e

medicine medicamentum, i n

membrane membrāna, ae f

membranous membranaceus, a,
um

middle medius, a, um

minimus minĭmus, a, um

minor minor, us

mirabile mirābilis, e

mobile mobĭlis, e

molar molāris, e

molar tooth dens molaris

mouth os, oris n

muscular musculāris, e

muscle muscŭlus, i m

N

nail unguis, is m

nasal nasālis, e

neck cervix, ĩcis f

nerve nervus, i m

nerve node ganglion, i n

nervous nervŏsus, a, um

network rete, is n

node nodus, i m

nodule nodŭlus, i m

nose nasus, i m

notch incisŭra, ae f

nuchal nuchālis, e

nucleus nucleus, i m

O

occipital occipitālis, e

occiput occĭput, ĩtis n

on in (Acc. to the question “where to?”, Abl. to the question “where?”)

opening forāmen, ĩnis n

operation operatio, ōnis f

optic optĭcus, a, um

ossicle ossicŭlum, i n

oval ovālis, e

P

palate palātum, i n

palatine palatĭnus, a, um

palatini (veli) palatĭnus, a, um

pancreas pancreas, ātis n

pancreatis pancreas, ātis n

parapharyngeal parapharyngeālis,
e
paravesical paravesicālis, e
parenchyma parenchŷma, ātis n
parietal parietālis, e
part pars, partis f
pectoral pectorālis, e
pelvis pelvis, is f
pelvic pelvīcus, a, um
permanent permānens, ntis
peroneal peronēus, a, um
petrosal petrōsus, a, um
phalanx phalanx, ngis f
pharynx pharynx, ngis m
plane planum, i n
plant planta, ae f
plexus plexus, us m
pollex, pollicis (thumb) pollex, ĭcis
m
posterior posterior, ius
preoccipital preoccipitālis, e
process processus, us m
prominent promīnens, ntis
proper proprius, a, um
pterygoid pterygoideus, a, um
pulvinar pulvīnar, āris n
pyramide pyrāmis, ĭdis f

R

radix radix, ĭcis f
rectum rectum, i n
region regio, ōnis f
renal renālis, e
respiratory respiratorius, a um
rete rete, is n
retina retīna, ae f
rhomboid rhomboideus, a, um
rib costa, ae f
right dexter, tra, trum
ring-shaped (= anular) anulāris, e
root, radix radix, ĭcis f
rotator (rotating muscle)
musculus rotātor, ōris m
round see *around*

S

sacral sacrālis, e
salivary salivarius, a. um
saphenous saphēnus. a, um
segment segmentum, i n
semilunar semilunāris, e
septum septum, i n
sheath vagīna, ae f
short brevis, e
sinus sinus, us m
simple simplex, ĭcis

skin cutis, is f
skull cranium, i n
small parvus, a, um
smaller minor, us
soft mollis, e
sole planta, ae f
space spatium, i n
sphenoidal sphenoidālis, e
splanchnic splanchnīcus, a, um
spleen lien, ēnis m
spur calcar, āris n
squamous squamōsus, a, um
sternal sternālis, e
sternum sternum, i n
stomach gaster, tris f
stony petrōsus, a, um
stroma stroma, ātis n
sublingual sublinguālis, e
submandibular submandibulāris, e
superficial superficiālis, e
superior, upper superior, ius
supraorbital supraorbitālis, e
suprapleural suprapleurālis, e
surface facies, ēi f
suture sutūra, ae f
system systēma, ātis n

T

tail cauda, ae f
tegmen tegmen, ĩnis n
temporal temporālis, e
tendon tendo, ĩnis m
tensor (straining muscle)
musculus tensor, ōris m
teres teres, ětis
term terminus, i m
thalamus thalāmus, i m
thigh femur, ōris n
third tertius, a, um
thoracic thoracīcus, a, um
thorax thorax, ācis m
through per (Acc.)
thyroid thyr(e) oideus, a, um
tip apex, ĩcis m
tissue textus, us m
to ad (Acc.)
tongue lingua, ae f
tooth dens, dentis m
transverse transversus, a, um
tree arbor, ōris f
trochanter trochanter, ēris m
true verus, a, um
trunk truncus, i m
tympanic tympanīcus, a, um

U

under infra (Acc.); sub (Acc. to the question “where to?”, Abl. to the question “where?”)

upper superior, ius

upper jaw, maxilla maxilla, ae f

ureter urēter, ēris m

use usus, us m

V

Vagina vagīna, ae f

vein vena, ae f

velum (curtain) velum, i n

vena (vein) vena, ae f

venae see vena

venous venōsus, a, um

ventricle vertricūlus, i m

vertebra vertēbra, ae f

vertebral vertebrālis, e

vessel vas, vasis n

vomer vomer, ěris m

voult (of pharynx) fornix, ĩcis m

W

wall paries, ětis m

wandering migrans, ntis

wing ala, ae f

wisdom sapientia, ae f

Z

zygomatic zygomaticus, a,

Part III. PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

Lesson 14

INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY

§ 71. General information on Latin pharmaceutical terminology

The words *pharmacal*, *pharmaceutical*, *pharmacy* etc originate from the ancient Greek word *pharmacon*, i. e. drug, medicine. Historically, the names of drugs and their component parts as well as the names of drug forms and some other pharmaceutical terms, particularly in medical prescriptions, are given in Latin. Nowadays, the use of Latin in the pharmaceutical practice of every country depends on its national tradition and other factors. Namely, the tradition of using Latin both in drug names and medical prescriptions exists in Russia, the Republic of Belarus, the Ukraine and some other European countries.

To Latin pharmaceutical terms belong:

1. Names of drugs: *Amidopyrīnum* (amidopyrin), *Corvalōlum* (corvalol), *Streptocīdum* (streptocide).
2. Names of medical plants: *Belladonna* (belladonna), *Digitālis* (foxglove), *Quercus* (oak).
3. Names of chemical elements: *Kalium* (potassium), *Oxygenium* (oxygen), *Sulfur* (sulphur).
4. Adjectives: *Mentha piperīta* (pepper mint), *Species antiasthmaticae* (antiasthmatic species), *Suppositoria vaginalia* (vaginal suppositories).
5. Names of drug forms: *Unguentum Tetracyclīni* (ointment of tetracycline), *Tabulettae Myelosāni* (tablets of myelosan), *Tinctūra Menthae* (tincture of mint).
6. Names of the parts of medical plants: *Tinctūra radīcis Valeriānae* (tincture of valerian roots), *Herba Valeriānae* (herb of valerian), *Flores Chamomillae* (flowers of matricary).

7. Supplementary nouns and adjectives (mainly in medical prescriptions):
dosis (dose), numĕrus (number), talis (such).

Now let us systematize the use of capital and small letters in Latin pharmaceutical terms.

The capital letter is used:

1. In the names of drugs: Codeīnum (codeine), Furacilīnum (furacilin), Validōlum (validol).

2. In the names of medical plants: Calendŭla (calendula), Eucalyptus (eucalyptus), Frangŭla (buckhorn).

3. In the names of chemical elements: Ferrum (iron), Oxygenium (oxygen), Zincum (zinc).

Attention! Nouns of these three groups are written with capital letter in the dictionary form too: Codeīnum, i n; Calendŭla, ae f; Ferrum, i n.

4. As the first letter of a name of the drug form, if this name is the first in a multiword term: *Linimentum* Streptocīdī (liniment of streptocide), *Species* antiasthmaticae (antiasthmatic species), *Tinctŭra* Valeriānae (tincture of valerian).

5. As the first letter of a name of the plant component, if this name is the first in a multiword term: *Herba* Valeriānae (herb of valerian), *Flores* Chamomillae (flowers of matricary), *Folia* Menthae piperītae (mint pepper leaves).

The small letter is used:

1. In adjectives both in the structure of a term and in the dictionary form: Mentha **piperīta** (piper mint); piperītus, a, um *pepper*;

Acīdum **acetylsalicylicum** (acetylsalicylic acid); acetylsalicylicus, a, um *acetylsalicylic*.

2. In drug form names or plant component names being not the first in the term structure as well as in the dictionary form of these names:

Acīdum acetylsalicylicum in *tabulettis* (acetylsalicylic acid in tablets); tabuletta, ae f *tablet*; acetylsalicylicus, a, um *acetylsalicylic*.

Decoctum *corticis* Quercus (decoction of oak bark); cortex, *icis m bark*;
decoctum, *i n decoction*.

3. If a drug form name or a plant component name is used without drug names:

unguenta et linimenta (ointments and liniments); solutio ad usum externum (solution for external use); pulvĕres composĭti (compound powders); folia et flores (leaves and flowers); radix et rhizōma (root and rhizome)

4. In constructions with a preposition indicating doctor's prescription, destination, order of drug use or way of storage:

Solutio Furacilĭni ad **usum externum** (solution of furacilin for external use); Tabulettae contra **tussim** (tablets for cough); Thea medicinālis pro **infantĭbus** (medicinal tea for children); Mixtio pro **inhalationĭbus** in **vitro nigro** (mixture for inhalation in a dark phial)

Some other peculiarities of using capital or small letter in pharmaceutical terms will be further described in the subsequent parts of this textbook.

§ 72. The drug form names

Every drug is produced in a physical form most adequate for use. Traditionally, three main forms are used: solid, semisolid and liquid.

Solid forms:

Dragĕes (dragĕe, a French word which is used without latinization in plural and has no Latin dictionary form) – dragees

Granŭla (**granŭlum, i n**) – granules of different form containing drug substances

Pilŭlae (**pilŭla, ae f**) – pills, small balls with a drug substance

Pulvĕres (**pulvis, ĕris m**) – powders

Species (**species, ĕrum f**, only Plural form) – species, mixture of different parts of medicinal plants

Tabulettae (**tabuletta, ae f**) – tablets

Theae (**thea, ae f**) – teas

Semisolid forms

Emplastra (**emplastrum, i n**) – plasters

Pastae (**pasta, ae f**) – pastes, thick ointments

Suppositoria (**suppositorium, i n**) – suppositories

Unguenta (**unguentum, i n**) – ointments

Liquid forms

Decocta (**decoctum, i n**) – decoctions

Emulsa (**emulsum, i n**) – emulsions

Extracta (**extractum, i n**) – extracts

Guttae (**gutta, ae f**) – drops (of liquids)

Infūsa (**infūsum, i n**) – infusions

Linimenta (**linimentum, i n**) – liniments

Mixtūrae (**mixtūra, ae f**) – mixtures

Mucilagīnes (**mucilāgo, ĩnis f**) – mucilages, liquids containing mucous substances

Olea (**oleum, i n**) – oils

Sirūpi (**sirūpus, i m**) – syrups

Solutiōnes (**solutio, ōnis f**) – solutions

Tinctūrae (**tinctūra, ae f**) – tinctures

Some other drug forms

Aërosōla (**aërosōlum, i n**) – aerosols

Capsūlae (**capsūla, ae f**) – capsules

Lamellae (= Membranūlae) ophthalmīcae (**lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f**) – ophthalmic films with drug

§ 73. Components of medical plants

cortex, ĩcis m – cortex, bark

flos, floris m – flower

folium, i n – leaf

herba, ae f – herb

radix, ĩcis f – root

rhizōma, ātis n – rhizome

fructus, us m – fruit

semen, ĩnis n – seed

§ 74. Medicinal plants in pharmaceutical terms

Medicinal plant names are mostly nouns of the 1st declension:

Chamomilla, ae f – matricary

Frangŭla, ae f – buckhorn

Some names are nouns of the 2nd declension:

Leonŭrus, i m – motherwort

Millefolium, i n – milfoil

Less numerous are nouns of the 3rd declension:

Digitālis, is f – foxglove

Adonis, ĩdis m, f – Adonis

Very rarely nouns of the 4th declension are used:

Quercus, us f – oak

One should remember that names of trees are always feminine:

Eucalyptus, i f – eucalyptus

Quercus, us f – oak

Some plant names consist of a noun and an adjective:

Mentha piperĭta – pepper mint

Adonis vernālis – spring Adonis

Medical plant names are used:

1. In the names of liquid drug forms: Tinctŭra Valeriānae – tincture of valerian;
Decoctum cortĭcis Quercus – decoction of oak bark
2. In the labels of different packages containing the components of medical plants:

Folia Urtĭcae – leaves of nettle;

Semen Lini – seed of flax

3. As a component of the medical prescription:

Recĭpe: Extracti Aloĕs fluĭdi 1 ml – Take: Liquid extract of aloe 1 ml

Recĭpe: Cortĭcis Crataegi 30,0 – Take: Cortex of hawthorn 30,0

As we see, the name of a plant component is always placed before a plant name.

§ 75. The morphological structure of one-word Latin drug names

One-word drug names usually consist of a noun root, a suffix (-**in-** is the most common, then follow suffixes -**ol-** and -**id-**), and, finally, the most common ending – **um**:

Codeīnum – codeine; Dibazōlum – dibazol; Saluzīdum – saluzid

In drug names specific Greek and Latin noun roots expressing certain pharmaceutical information are widely used. The knowledge of these most common morphological elements enables to write correctly complicated drug names, which is one of the main tasks of learning the pharmaceutical part of our subject. Let us memorize the first part of these morphological elements:

Morphological root	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent
-cyclin-	antibiotics -tetracycline	Tetracyclīnum	tetracycline
-cyclo-	making an effect on the metabolic processes	Cycloserīnum	cycloserin
-menth-	a product including mint	Menthōlum	menthol
-mycīn-	antibiotics-streptomycin	Monomycīnum	monomycin
-myco-	antimycotic, against fungi	Mycoseptīnum	mycoseptin
-pyr-	influence on the body temperature	Antipyriūnum but: Aspirinum!	antipyrin aspirine
-strept-	different pharmaceutical effects	Streptocīdum	streptocide

You should memorize prefixes of Greek origin used to construct a drug name:

Prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent
a-, an- (before a vowel)	denying, removing	Apressīnum Analgīnum	apressin analgin
anti-	acting against	antiasthmaticus	antiasthmatic
hyper-	increase, elevation	Hyperōlum	hyperol
hypo-	decrease, lowering	Hypothiazīdum	hypothiazid

§ 76. Some rules of building multiword pharmaceutical terms

Every multiword Latin pharmaceutical term begins, as a rule, with a drug form name. Then, the drug name follows. If the drug form has an adjective, this adjective is the last in the term:

Extractum Crataegi fluīdum – liquid extract of hawthorn

Tabulettae Tetracyclīni obductae – coated tablets of tetracycline

Sometimes, the drug name is used without a form name, particularly if the prescription or way of storage is indicated:

Aether pro narcōsi – ether for narcosis

Cycloserīnum in capsūlis – cycloserin in capsules

Somatotropīnum humānum pro injectionībus – human somatotropin for injections

Thyreoidīnum in tabulettis – thyreoidin in tablets

Latin names of drugs with compound composition can be enclosed into quotation marks or inverted commas. But English equivalents of these names are used without quotation marks or inverted commas, compare:

Aërosolum «Camphomenum» – aerosol of camphomen

Suppositoria “Anaesthesolum” – suppositories of anaesthesol

In the vocabulary you can find indication with which nouns these specific signs are used.

§ 77. Exercises

1. *Write down the dictionary form of each word and translate it into English:*

Extractum Leonūri fluīdum; Linimentum Aloës; Rhizōma cum radicībus Valeriānae; Sirūpus ex fructībus Rosae; Solutio «Testosterōnum» pro injectionībus; Suppositoria vaginalia cum Synthomycīno; Tabulettae Aspirīni obductae; Tinctūra foliōrum Eucalypti; Unguentum Dibiomycīni ophthalmīcum.

2. *Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:*

antiasthmatic species; coated tablets of tetracycline; decoction of oak bark; tincture of pepper mint; dry extract of belladonna; ether for narcosis; herb of spring Adonis; liquid extract of hawthorn; medicinal tea for children; mint pepper leaves; ointment of mycoseptin; powder of foxglove leaves; root and rhizome of valerian; simple and compound powders; tablets of antipyrin; tincture of matricary flowers.

§ 78. Vocabulary to lesson 14

I. Latin – English vocabulary

Aloë, ës f	aloe
Aspirīnum, i n	aspirin
cum (Abl.)	with
Dibiomycīnum, i n	dibiomycine
ex (Abl.)	of , from
Eucalyptus, i f	eucalyptus
extractum, i n	extract
fluīdus, a um	liquid
folium, i n	leaf
fructus, us m	fruit
injectio, ōnis f	injection
Leonūrus, i m	motherwort
linimentum, i n	liniment
obductus, a, um	coated
ophthalmīcus, a, um	ophthalmic
pro (+Abl.)	for
radix, īcis f	root
Rosa, ae f	dog rose, wild rose
rhizōma, ātis n	rhizome
sirūpus, i m	syrup
solutio, ōnis f	solution
suppositorium, i n	suppository
Synthomycīnum, i n	synthomycin
tabuleta, ae f	tablet
tinctūra, ae f	tincture
Testosterōnum, i n	testosterone
unguentum, i n	ointment
vaginālis, e	vaginal
Valeriāna, ae f	valerian

II. English – Latin vocabulary

adonis, pheasant's eye	Adōnis, ĩdis m, f
antiasthmatic	antiasthmaticus, a, um
antipyrin	Antipyrĭnum, i n
bark	cortex, ĩcis m
belladonna	Belladonna, ae f
children	infantes, ium m, f
coated	obductus, a, um
compound	compositus, a, um
decoction	decoctum, i n
dry	siccus, a, um
ether	aether, ěris m
extract	extractum, i, n
flower	flos, floris m
for	pro (+Abl.)
foxglove	Digitālis, is f
hawrhorn	Crataegus, i f
herb	herba, ae f
leaf	folium, i n
liquid	fluidus, a, um
matricary	Chamomilla, ae f
medicinal	medicinālis, e
mint	Mentha, ae f
mycoseptin	Mycoseptinum, i n
narcosis	narcōsis, is f
oak	Quercus, us f
ointment	unguentum, i n
pepper	piperĭtus, a, um
powder	pulvis, ěris m
rhizome	rhizōma, ātis n
root	radix, ĩcis f
simple	simplex, ĩcis
species	species, ěrum f (only plur.)
spring	vernālis, e
tablet	tabuleta, ae f
tea	thea, ae f
tertracycline	Tetracyclĭnum, i n
tincture	tinctūra, ae f
valerian	Valeriāna, ae f

Lesson 15

LATIN IN THE MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION. STANDARD VERB

FORMS INDICATING ORDER AND INSTRUCTIONS IN MAKING UP
THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION. GENERAL RULES
OF MAKING UP THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION

§ 79. Current use of Latin in medical prescription

The use of Latin medical prescription nowadays is still common in many states of Europe, particularly in the countries of the former USSR including the Republic of Belarus and the Russian Federation. That is why the rules of proper use of Latin in medical prescriptions are obligatory in medical university syllabus of these states. Latin inscriptions are written on the labels of drug packing, reference books, and in medical prescriptions.

§ 80. The Imperative verb forms used in a simple medical prescription

The Latin part of a medical prescription begins with the Imperative form *Reciĉpe: Take:* This word is addressed to a pharmacist who has to prepare and to hand over a drug to a person.

If the drug is produced by a pharmaceutical plant then the prescription includes the name of this drug which is written after *Reciĉpe:*

Reciĉpe: Unguenti Tetracyclĭni ophthalmĭci 10,0 –

Take: Ointment of ophthalmic tetracycline 10,0

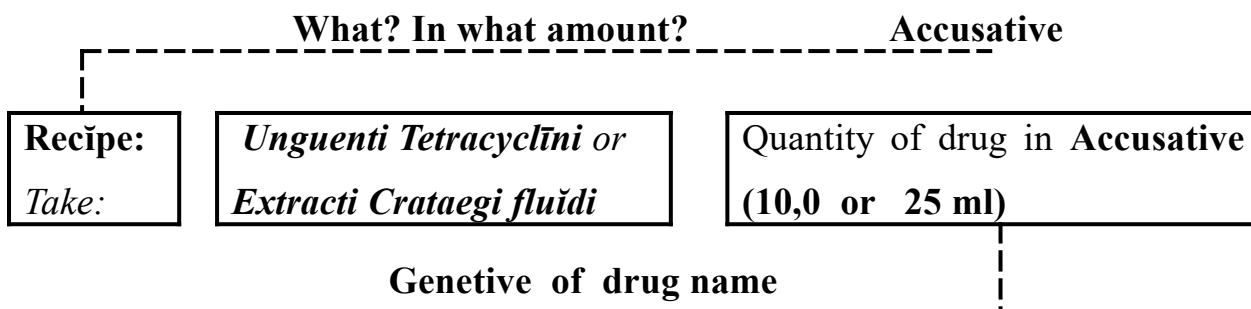
Reciĉpe: Extracti Crataegi fluĭdi 30 ml –

Take: Liquid hawthorn extract 30 ml .

It is to be taken into consideration that in the Latin text of prescription after *Recipe* as a rule Genitive case of a drug form or Genitive of a part of medical plant is written, but in English text in this case always the usual form of a name (in Latin it is meant Nominative) is used.

One should pay attention to the fact as well that both the drug form and the drug name after *Recipe* are in the Genitive form. This case form depends on the quantity of the drug administered mainly in gram amounts (indicated in decimal

points without the abbreviation gr.) and milliliter amounts with the abbreviation ml:



After this first line a second one is following with two standard Imperative verb forms: Da. (Give) and Signa (Write on the label) so that the full prescription gets the following form:

Recīpe: Unguenti Tetracyclini 10,0	Take	<i>Ointment of tetracycline 10,0</i>
	:	
	Da. Signa:	<i>Give. Write on the label:</i>
Recīpe: Extracti Crataegi fluīdi 25 ml	Take	<i>Liquid hawthorn extract 25 ml</i>
	:	
	Da. Signa:	<i>Give. Write on the label:</i>

After the standard expression Signa – Write on the label – goes the signature where the physician indicates the way of using the drug in the patient’s native language. So – from Recīpe to Signa – that is how the Latin part of a simple prescription, when the drug is to be kept in a drugstore in the prepared form, is written.

§ 81. The Conjunctive forms in medical prescription

The Imperative verb forms can be substituted (with some exception) for the Conjunctive mode forms. These Conjunctive forms are translated into English with the word combination «let it be»+ Participle II:

Imperative form	English equivalent	Conjunctive form	English equivalent
Adde	Add	Addātur	Let it be added
Da	Give	Detur	Let it be given

		Dentur tales doses	Let such doses be given
Misce	Mix	Misceātur	Let it be mixed
Repēte	Repeat	Repetātur	Let it be repeated
Signa	Write on the label	Signētur	Let it be labelled
Sterilīsa!	Sterilize!	Sterilisētur!	Let it be sterilized!

One should remember that the Imperative form *Recīpe* can never be replaced by the Conjunctive one.

The use of the Imperative or Conjunctive forms depends only on the physician writing a medical prescription. As to students, they are to be able to write correctly the grammar form of an order or an instruction according to the initial Latin or English verb form.

§ 82. The structure of a complex medical prescription

Sometimes the physician asks the pharmacist to prepare a drug in the pharmacy. In this case, he writes down all the components of this drug. Such a prescription is called a complex one. Naturally, in such a prescription the physician indicates some components to be mixed: *Misce* – *Mix*. He can also define more precisely for what purpose the mixture is necessary – that is for making some drug form. In this case, two forms are used: **fiat** for the nouns in singular and **fiant** for the nouns in plural:

Misce, fiat pulvis – *Mix to make a powder*

Misce, fiant suppositoria vaginalia – *Mix to make vaginal suppositories*

One should remember that the Imperative form *Misce* is only used in the combination with the forms *fiat* and *fiant*.

Sometimes, the physician indicates in which form and in what amount the drug is to be prepared. In this case, he writes down these standard forms:

Da (Dentur) ales doses numēro ... in tabulettis (ampullis, capsūlis etc) – Give such doses in the amount 10 or: Let such doses be given in the amount 10 in tablets (ampoules, capsules etc.).

If two or more components are taken in the same amount, the dose is indicated only after the latter one, and the adverb *ana* “of each” is written before this amount:

Recīpe: Corticis Frangūlae	Take: Cortex of buckthorn
Foliōrum Urtīcae ana 15,0	Leaves of nettle of each 15,0

Now, let us see some complex medical prescriptions with different standard

phrases:

Recīpe: Sulfadimezīni	Take: Sulfadimezine
Streptocīdi	Streptocide
Synthomycini ana 1,0	Synthomycin of each 1,0
Misce, fiat pulvis	Mix to make a powder
Detur	Let it be given
Signētur:	Let it be labelled:

Recīpe: Euphyllini 0,2	Take: Euphyllin
Butyri Cacao 2,0	Cocoa oil 2,0
Misce, fiat suppositorium	Mix to make a suppository
Da tales doses numēro 6	Give such doses in the amount 6
Signa:	Write on the label:

§ 83. Some peculiarities of quantity expression in a medical prescription

Sometimes, the amount of oils or other liquids can be indicated in drops. The number of drops is written in Roman figures. If one drop is indicated, so the Accusative singular form **guttam** is used, if more than one, the Accusative plural form **guttas** is used:

Recīpe: Olei Menthae piperītae guttam I	Take: Mint pepper oil I drop
--	-------------------------------------

Recīpe: Olei Eucalypti guttas V	Take: Eucalypt oil V drops
--	-----------------------------------

In some cases, the physician doesn't indicate the dosage of a complex prescription component and lets the pharmacist determine the quantity of this component on his own. In this case, the standard expression **quantum satis** – in sufficient amount – is used:

Recīpe: Chinosōli 0,03	Take: Chinosol 0,03
Acīdi borīci 0,3	Boric acid 0,3

Tannini 0,06
 Olei Cacao quantum satis,
 fiat suppositorium vaginale
 Da tales doses numēro 6
 Signa:

Tannin 0,06
 Cocoa oil in sufficient amount
 to make a vaginal suppository
 Give such doses in the amount 6
 Write on the label:

§ 84. Some important rules for making up the Latin part of a medical prescription

1. Every new line begins with capital letter.
2. Every first letter of the next new line is written strictly under the first letter of the previous one.
3. If the prescription text is to be continued in the next line, the first letter in the next line should begin under the fourth letter of the previous one.
4. Any correction in the prescription text is forbidden.

§ 85. Morphological roots of plant origin indicating alkaloids and glycosides with different pharmaceutical effects

Morphological roots	Latin examples	English equivalents
-anth-	Galanthamīnum, i n	galanthamine
	Helianthus, i m	sunflower
-eph-,	Ephatīnum, i n	ephatin
-ephedr-,	Ephedrīnum, i n	ephedrin
-phedr-	Theophedrīnum, i n	theophedrin
-glyc(y)-	Glycerīnum, i n	glycerin
	Corglycōnum, i n	corglycon
	Glycyrrhīza, ae f	licorice
	Sed: Glucōsum, i n	But: glucose
-phyll-	Euphyllīnum, i n	euphylline
	Platyphyllīnum, i n	platyphylline
-phyt	Phytīnum, i n	phytin
	Phytolysīnum, i n	phytolysin

Morphological roots	Latin examples	English equivalents
-stroph-	Strophanthus, i m	strophanthus
	Strophosānum, i n	strophosan
-the(o) –	Theobromīnum, i n	theobromine
	Theophyllīnum, i n	theophylline

§ 86. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into English:

Capsūlae Phytomenadiōni; Emulsum olei Helianthi; Granūla Glycyrāmi; Pulvis Phytīni pro infantībus; Solutio Corglycōni in ampullis; Solutio Glucōsi pro injectionībus; Suppositoria cum Euphyllīno; Tabulettae «Theopedrīnum»; Theophyllīnum in tabulettis.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate the terms into Latin:

aerosol of ephatin; dry (liquid) extract of licorice; glyceric solution of ichthyol; oily solution of phytomenadion; pectoral species; tincture of strophanthus; sunflower oil for emulsion; suppositories with theophylline; sublingual tablets of glycin

3. Write down the dictionary form of the nouns and adjectives as well as standard verb forms indicating order or instruction in the medical prescription; translate the texts of medical prescriptions into Latin:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Take: Soluble streptocide 5,0 | Take: Theophylline 0,2 |
| Solution of glucose 10 % – | Cocoa oil 2,0 |
| 100 ml | Mix to make a rectal suppository |
| Mix. Let it be sterilized! | Give |
| Give. | Write on the label: |
| Write on the label: | |
| 3. Take: Tincture of srophanthus 5 ml | 4. Take: Oily solution of nitroglycerin 1 % |
| Tincture of lily of the valley | – 0,0005 |
| Tincture of valerian of each | Let such doses be given in the |

	10 ml		amount 20 in capsules
	Let it be mixed		Let it be labelled:
	Let it be given		
	Let it be labelled:		
Take:	Solution of strophanthine	6. Take:	Bark of althea
	0,05 % – 1 ml		Bark of licorice
	Give such doses in the amount 10		Seed of flax of each 10,0
	in ampoules		Leaves of eucalyptus 2,5
	Write on the label:		Mix to make a species
			Give. Write on the label:
7. Take:	Chloroform	8. Take:	Ichthyol 3,0
	Sunflower oil of each 20 ml		Vaseline up to 30,0
	Mix to make a liniment		Mix to make an ointment
	Let it be given		Give.
	Let it be labelled:		Write on the label:

§ 87. Vocabulary to lesson 15

I. Latin – English vocabulary

ampulla, ae f	ampoule
capsūla, ae f	capsule
Corglycōnum, i n	corglycon
Glucōsum, i	glucose
Glycyrāmum, i n	glycyram
granūlum, i n	granule
emulsum, i n	emulsion
Euphyllīnum, i n	euphylline
Helianthus, i m	sunflower
infans, ntis m, f	child
Phytīnum, i n	phytin
Phytomenadiōnum, i n	phytomenadion
pulvis, ěris m	powder
solutio, ōnis f	solution
tabuleta, ae f	tablet
Theophedrīnum, i n	theophedrin
Thophyllīnum, i n	theophylline

II. English – Latin vocabulary

aerosol	aërosōlum, i n
althea	Althaea, ae f
amount (= number)	numērus, i m
ampoule	ampulla, ae f
capsule	capsūla, ae f
chloroform	Chloroformium, i n
cocoa	Cacāo (without a dictionary form)
dose	dosis, is f
extract	extractum, i n
ephatin	Ephatīnum, i n
emulsion	emulsum, i n
eucalyptus	Eucalyptus, i f
flax	Linum, i n
glucose	Glucōsum, i n
glyceric	glycerinōsus, a, um
glycin	Glycīnum, i n
ichthyol	Ichthyōlum, i n
leave	folium, i n
licorice	Glycyrrhīza, ae f
lily of the valley	Convallaria, ae f
liniment	linimentum, i n
make (to make)	fiat (sing.), fiant (plur.)
nitroglycerin	Nitroglycerīnum, i n
of each	ana
oil	oleum, i n
oily	oleōsus, a, um
pectoral	pectorālis, e
phytomenadion	Phytomenadiōnum, i n
rectal	rectālis, e
seed	semen, ĩnis n
soluble	solubīlis, e
solution	solutio, ōnis f
species	species, ērum f (only plural)
streptocide	Streptocīdum, i n
strophanthine	Strophanthīnum, i n
strophanthus	Strophanthus, i m
sublingual	sublinguālis, e
such	talis, e
sunflower	Helianthus, i m
theophylline	Theophyllīnum, i n
up to	ad
vaseline	Vaselīnum, i n

Lesson 16

THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE OF SOME PHARMACEUTICAL FORMS IN THE FIRST LINE OF A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION

§ 88. General information on the use of the Accusative of the pharmaceutical forms in a medical prescription

The Accusative of some pharmaceutical forms is used only in a simple medical prescription. This is the way of prescribing tablets, drops, suppositories, ophthalmic films, sponges for different medical purposes, aerosols. The name of these pharmaceutical forms is written in the Accusative singular or plural. The Latin drug name in the Nominative form is sometimes enclosed in inverted commas or quotation marks, which are omitted in the English text, where in this case the common construction with preposition «of» is used. The amount of the prescribed drug is in so doing not indicated in grams or in milliliters but is expressed by the word “numerus” (number) in the Ablative form (numero) and a common figure. In the second line the standard verb forms are written:

Reciġpe: Tabulettas “Antistrumīnum” numero 50 Detur. Signetur:	Take: Tablets of antistrumin number 50 Let it be given Let it be labelled:
Reciġpe: Tabulettas Aloës obductas 0,05 numero 20 Da	Take: Coated tablets of aloe number 20 Give.

Signa:

Write on the label:

As in English drug names inverted commas or quotation marks are not used, it is impossible when translating to find out which Latin equivalent drug name with these specific signs is to be written. That is why when translating from English into Latin we have to consult the dictionary and to find out whether the drug name is enclosed in inverted commas or quotation marks or not. So, if we see in the dictionary: psoriasin (ointment) – Unguentum “Psoriasinum”; antistrumin (tablets) – Tabulettae «Antistruminum»; Benspar (capsules) – Capsulae “Bensparum”, we know, how the Latin drug name is to be written correctly, for example:

Take: Capsules of benspar

number 100

Give.

Write on the label:

Recipe: Capsulas “Benspar”

numero 100

Da.

Signa:

Now let us see in detail the use of different pharmaceutical forms in the Accusative.

§ 89. The prescription of tablets in the Accusative form

The drug prescription in tablets may proceed in three forms.

In the first case after Recipe the Accusative singular form Tabulettam is written, then follow the drug name in the Genitive form and the dose. In the second line of the prescription the instruction Da (Dentur) tales doses numero... in tabulettis is written and after that the standard verb form Signa (Signetur) follows:

Recipe: Tabulettam Paracetamoli 0,3

Da tales doses numero 6

in tabulettis

Signa:

Take: Tablet of paracetamol 0,3

Give such doses in the

amount 6 in tablets

Write on the label:

In the second case after “Recipe” the Accusative plural form “Tabulettas” is written, then follow the drug name in the Genitive form and figures indicating the

amount of active medical substance of a tablet and, finally, the dosage expressed by the “numero” and a figure:

Reciĥpe: Tabulettas Paracetamōli 0,3 numĕro 6 Da. Signa:	Take: Tablets of paracetamol 0,3 number 6 Give Write on the label:
---	---

But the same drug can be prescribed in a traditional form indicating the drug quantity, and that is the third way of drug prescribing in the tablet form. In this case after “Reciĥpe” the drug name and its dose follow. In the second line the instruction *Da (Dentur) tales doses numĕro 6 in tabulettis* and, finally, the standard form “Signa” (“Signetur”) are written:

Reciĥpe: Paracetamōli 0,3 Da tales doses numĕro 6 in tabulettis Signa:	Take: Paracetamol 0,3 Give such doses in the amount 6 in tablets Write on the label:
---	---

It is absolutely imperative that every physician is to know all the ways of writing out medical prescriptions. But the choice of a prescription form is up to him.

§ 90. The prescription of dragees in the Accusative form

Dragee originates from the French word “dragée”. The last word is used as the equivalent in Latin pharmaceutical terminology” and is prescribed mainly in the plural form. From the grammar point of view, the “dragées” is considered as Accusative depending on the word Reciĥpe, but as a French word, it has no case and dictionary form. The prescription regulations for dragees are the following. After the “Reciĥpe” follow the form *Dragées*, the drug names in inverted commas (quotation marks) or in the Genitive form and the Ablative case “numero” with a figure indicating the dose:

Recipe: Dragées “Undevitum” numero	Take: Dragees of undevit number 30
------------------------------------	------------------------------------

Detur.	Let it be given
Signetur:	Let it be labelled:

One should add that sometimes, an other order of drops prescription is used. In this case, after Recīpe the singular form Dragée is written with the drug name in the Genitive and a figure indicating the dose. In the second line follows the phrase Da (Dentur tales doses) numero...:

Recīpe: Dragée Diazolini 0,05	Take: Dragée of diazolin 0,05
Da tales doses numero 20	Give such doses in the amount 20
Signa:	Write on the label:

§ 91. The prescription of ophthalmic films

Ophthalmic films are absorbable gelatin films containing drug substances. They are used instead of ophthalmic drops when keeping such a film under the eyelid at night.

The ophthalmic films are usually prescribed with the preposition “cum”. The prescription regulations for the ophthalmic films are the following. The verb Recīpe is followed by the Accusative plural forms lamellas (or membranulas) ophthalmicas, the drug name in the Genitive, the preposition “cum” with the active pharmaceutical component and the form *numěro* with a figure. In the second and third lines the standard phrases Da (Dentur) tales doses numero ... and *Signa (Signetur)* are written:

Recīpe: Lamellas ophthalmīcas cum	Take: Ophthalmic films with
Novocaīno numěro 8	Novocain number 8
Da. Signa:	Give. Write on the label:

§ 92. The prescription of medical sponges

A pharmaceutical sponge is a porous substance saturated with a drug. It is applied to the necessary place and has antiseptic, haemostatic and other

pharmaceutical effects. Pharmaceutical sponges are usually prescribed in plural form and in two variants.

1. The verb *Recīpe* is followed by the Accusative plural form *Spongias*, the drug name in quotation marks (inverted commas) and the “numero” with a figure. The second and the third lines contain the standard phrases *Da (Detur)* and *Signa (Signetur)*:

Recīpe: Spongias “Methuracōlum”	Recīpe: Sponges of meturacol
numĕro 10	number 10
Da	Give
Signa:	Write on the label:

2. *Recīpe* is followed by the Accusative plural forms *Spongias* and an adjective, the preposition “with”, the drug name and the form “numero” with a figure. After that the standard forms *Da (Detur)* and *Signa (Signetur)* follow:

Recīpe: Spongias antisepticas cum Kanamycīno numĕro 5
Detur.
Signĕtur:

<i>Take: Antiseptic sponges with kanamycin number 5</i>
<i>Let it be given</i>
<i>Let it be labelled:</i>

§ 93. The prescription of suppositories in the Accusative case

A pharmaceutical suppository is a drug in the form of a round or conical tablet which is solid at room temperature and semisolid at body temperature. They distinguish the rectal suppository and the vaginal one. In the Accusative case, suppositories are prescribed as medical sponges:

1. *Recīpe* is followed by the Accusative plural form *Suppositoria* with the adjective *vaginalia (rectalia)* or without these adjectives, the drug name in

inverted commas and the numero with a figure. The second and the third lines contain the standard phrases *Da (Dentur)* and *Signa (Signetur)*:

Recīpe: Suppositoria vaginalia «Osarbōnum» numĕro 10

Da. Signa:

Vaginal suppositories of osarbon number 10

Give. Write on the label:

2. *Recipe* is followed the Accusative plural form *Suppositoria*, the preposition “cum” and the active pharmaceutical component in the Ablative, a figure indicating the amount of this component, the form “numero” with a figure. After that the standard forms *Da (Detur)* and *Signa (Signetur)* follow in the next lines:

Recīpe: Suppositoria cum Diprophyllīno 0,5 numĕro 30

Detur. Signĕtur:

Take: Suppositories with diprophylline 0,5 number 30

Let it be given. Let it be labelled:

§ 94. The prescription of aerosols in the Accusative case

An aerosol contains the drug in a gaseous form which is contained in a small cylinder provided with a valve.

Aerosols are prescribed in the Accusative singular form in two ways:

1. *Recipe* is followed by the Accusative singular form *Aĕrosolum*, its name in inverted commas and the numero with a figure. After that the standard forms *Da (Detur)* and *Signa (Signetur)* follow in the next lines:

Recīpe: Aĕrosōlum «Proposōlum»
numĕro 2

*Take: Aerosol of proposol
number 2*

Da

Give.

Signa:

Write on the label:

2. *Recipe* is followed by the Accusative singular form *Aĕrosolum* and its name in inverted commas or quotation marks. In the second line, the standard phrase *Da (Dentur) tales doses numero* is written:

Recīpe: Aĕrosolum «Proposōlum»

Take: Aerosol of proposol

Da tales doses numĕro 2

Give such doses in the amount 2

Signa:

Write on the label:

§ 95. Morphological roots

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
-aesthes-, -aesth-, -asthes-, -esthes-	correction of sensibility	Anaesthesīnum, i n Aesthocīnum, i n Bellasthesīnum, i n Pavesthesīnum, i n	anaesthesin aesthocin bellasthesin pavesthesin
-cain-	anesthetic effect	Novocānum, i n Ultracānum, i n	novocain ultracain
-camph-	influence on the central and peripheral nervous system	Bromcamphōra, ae f Camphonium, i n	bromcamphora camphonium
-erythr-, -eryth-, -ery-	1) containing erythromycin 2) produced from erythrocytes	Erythromycīnum, i n Eryhaemum, i n Erycyclīnum, i n	erythromycin eryhaem erycyclin
-haem-	haemostatic or haematopoiesis stimulating effect	haemostatīcus, a, um Haemostimulīnum, i n	haemostatic haemostimulin
-oestr-	female genital hormones	Oestradiōlum, i n Synoestrōlum, i n	oestradiol synoestrol
-test-	male genital hormones	Medrotestrōnum, i n Testosterōnum, i n	medrotestron testosteron
-thym-	immunity stimulators produced by thymus	Thymalīnum, i n Thymoptīnum, i n	thymalin thymoptin
-thyr-	correction of thyroid function	Thyroidīnum, i n Rifathyroīnum, i n	thyroidin rifathyroin

§ 96. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from Latin into English:

Ampullae cum pulvĕre Rifathyroīni; Granūla Erycyclīni in capsūlis; Injēctiōnes Thymalīni pro adultis; Lamellae ophthalmīcae cum Dicaīno; Pulvis Dicaīni crystallisātus; Solutio Pyromecaīni pro infusionībus intravenōsis; Spongia haemostatīca in vitro vitreo; Suppositoria “Anaesthesōlum”; Thyreoidīnum in tabulettis.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from English into Latin:

anaesthesin for narcosis; camphoric spirit for triturating; eryhaem in vitreous phials; haemostatic plaster of feracryl; oily solution of synoestrol in the ampoules; testoenat for injections; tablets of pregoestrol; solution of thymogen for intranasal introduction

3. Give the dictionary form of the nouns and the adjectives, translate the medical prescriptions into Latin:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Take: Coated tablets of allochol
for children number 25
Give. Write on the label: | 2. Take: Capsules of oestradiol 0,14
number 12
Give. Write on the label: |
| 3. Take: Thyreoidin 0,05
Let such doses be given in
the amount 50 in tablets
Let it be labelled: | 4. Take: Solution of haemophobin 5 ml
Give such doses in the
amount 10 in ampoules
Write on the label: |
| 5. Take: Erynit 0,1
Give such doses in the
amount 20 in tablets
Write on the label: | 6. Take: Ophthalmic films with
neomycin number 8
Let it be given
Let it be labelled: |
| 7. Take: Vaginal suppositories
with synthomycin
0,15 number 10
Give. Write on the label: | 8. Take: Aerosol of camphomen
Give such doses in the
amount 2
Write on the label: |

9. Take: Haemostatic collagen
 sponge
 Let such doses be given in
 the amount 4 in plastic
 packets
 Let it be labelled:

10. Take: Anaesthesin 2,5
 Cocoa oil in sufficient
 amount to make a
 rectal suppository
 Let such dose be given in the
 amount 50 in tablets
 Let it be labelled:

§ 97. Vocabulary to lesson 16

I. Latin – English vocabulary

adultus, a, um; adult; an adult person	adult
ampulla, ae f	ampoule
“Anaesthesōlum” (Anaesthesōlum, i n)	anaesthesol
capsūla, ae f	capsule
crystallisātus, a, um	crystal
Dicaīnum, i n	dicain
Erycyclīnum, i n	erycyclin
granūlum, i n	granule
haemostatīcus, a, um	haemostatic
infusio, ōnis f	infusion
intravenōsus, a, um	intravenous
lamella, ae f	film (ophthalmic)
Oestradiōlum, i n	oestradiol
ophthalmīcus, a, um	ophthalmic
Pyromecaīnum, i n	pyromecain
pulvis, ěris m	powder
Rifathyroīnum, i n	rifathyroin
spongia, ae f	sponge
Thymalīnum, i n	thymalin
Thyreoidīnum, i n	thyreoidin

vitrum, i n	phial, glass
vitreus, a, um	vitreous

II. English – Latin vocabulary

aerosol	aërosōlum, i n
alcohol	Allochōlum, i n
ampoule	ampulla, ae f
anaesthesin	Anaesthesīnum, i n
camphomen	“Camphomēnum” (Camphomēnum, i n)
camphoric	camphorātus, a, um
collagen	collagenīcus, a, um
eryhaem	Eryhaemum, i n
erynit	Erynītum, i n
erythromycin	Erythromycīnum, i n
feracryl	“Feracrȳlum” (Feracrȳlum, i n)
film	lamella, ae f; membranŭla, ae f
glass	1) vitrum, i n 2) vitreus, a, um
haemophobin	Haemophobīnum, i n
haemostatic	haemostatīcus, a, um
in sufficient amount	quantum satis
intranasal	intranasālis, e
introduction	inductio, ōnis f
neomycin	Neomycīnum, i n
number	numĕrus, m
oily	oleōsus, a, um
oestradiol	Oestradiōlum, i n
packet	fascis, is m
phial	vitrum, i n
plaster	emplasrum, i n
plastic	polyaethylenīcus, a, um
pregoestrol	Praegoestrōlum, i n

sponge	spongia, ae f
synthomycin	Synthomycīnum, i n
spirit (alcohol)	spirītus, us m
synoestrol	Synoestrōlum, i n
testoenat	Testoenātum, i n
thyreoidin	Thyreoidīnum, i n
tritulating, trituration	trituriatio, ōnis f
thymogen	Thymogĕnum, i n
vaginal	vaginālis, e
vitrous	vitreus, a, um

Lesson 17

LATIN NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS, ACIDS, OXIDES, HYDROXIDES, PEROXIDES

§ 98. Latin names of chemical elements

Latin names of chemical elements are, as a rule, nouns of the second declension and of the neuter gender beginning always with a capital letter:

Aluminium, i n *aluminum* Ferrum, i n *iron* Zincum, i n *zinc*

Nouns of two chemical elements are exception from this rule:

Phosphōrus, i m *phosphorus*

Sulfur, ūris n *sulphur* (*in American English the spelling is sulfur*)

Some elements have double names:

fluorine *Fluōrum, i n = Phthorum, i n*

magnesium *Magnium, i n = Magnesium, i n*

See the chemical element names of most common usage in the table below:

Latin chemical symbols	Latin names	English names
Al	Aluminium	aluminium
Ag	Argentum	silver
As	Arsenicum	arsenic
Au	Aurum	gold
B	Borum	boron
Ba	Barium	barium
Bi	Bismuthum	bismuth
B	Borum	boron
Br	Bromum	bromine
Ca	Calcium	calcium
C	Carboneum	carbon
Cl	Chlorum	chlorine
Cu	Cuprum	copper
Fe	Ferrum	iron
F	Fluōrum seu Phthorum	fluorine
Hg	Hydrargyrum	mercury
H	Hydrogenium	hydrogen
I	Iōdum	iodine
K	Kalium	potassium
Li	Lithium	lithium
Mg	Magnium seu Magnesium	magnesium
Mn	Mangānum	manganese
Na	Natrium	sodium
N	Nitrogenium	nitrogen
O	Oxygenium	oxygen
Pb	Plumbum	lead
P	Phosphorus	phosphorus
Si	Silicium	silicon
S	Sulfur	sulphur (sulfur)
Zn	Zincum	zinc

§ 99. Latin names of acids

Every Latin acid name consists of the noun *acĭdum* (acid) and an adjective of the first group with the ending **-um** in accordance with the rules of grammar agreement. One should, hereby, pay attention, that in the dictionary form, both nouns and adjective are written with a small letter but in the combination with an adjective the noun *acĭdum* is written with a capital letter:

acĭdum, i n – acid *borĭcus*, a, um – boric **but:** *Acĭdum borĭcum*

There are three variants of Latin acid names. The first two variants cover the names of acids which include oxygen, the last one – the names of acids without oxygen.

In the first variant, when an acid contains the greatest amount of oxygen, the suffix **-ic-** and the ending **-um** are added to the stem of a chemical element. English equivalents of these Latin adjectives have the suffix **-ic** as a final element:

Latin noun of chemical element	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ūris n	sulfur-	sulfurĭcus, a, um	Acĭdum sulfurĭcum (H ₂ SO ₄)	sulphuric acid

The same way of acid names building is used when names of organic acids are formed:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
lac, lactis n (milk)	lact-	lactĭcus, a, um	Acĭdum lactĭcum	lactic acid

In the second variant when the acid of the same element contains lesser amount of oxygen, the suffix **-os-** is used. In this case English equivalents have the ending **-ous**:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ūris n	sulfur-	sulfurōsus, a, um	Acīdum sulfurōsum (H ₂ SO ₃)	sulphurous acid

In the third variant, when an acid doesn't contain oxygen, the prefix **hydro-** and the suffix **-ic-** are added to the stem:

Latin noun	The stem	Latin adjective indicating the acid	The full Latin name of the acid	The full English name of the acid
Sulfur, ūris n	sulfur-	hydrosulfurīcus, a, um	Acīdum sulfurōsum (H ₂ S)	hydrosulphuric acid

One should remember that in acid names (as well as in salt names) formed from the noun Nitrogenium only a part of the stem is used: **-nitr**:

Acīdum nitrīcum – nitric acid Acīdum nitrōsum – nitrous acid

§ 100. Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides

Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides consist of two words. The first one is always the Genitive form of a chemical element, then the Nominative form oxŷdum (hydroxŷdum, peroxydum) follows:

Zinci oxŷdum – zinc oxide

Aluminii hydroxŷdum – aluminum hydroxide

Hydrogenii peroxydum – hydrogen peroxide

The names oxŷdum, hydroxŷdum, peroxydum are nouns of the neutral gender of the second declension:

oxŷdum, i n

hydroxŷdum, i n

peroxŷdum, i n

§ 101. Morphological roots reflecting chemical information

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
-(a)z-, -(a)zid-, -(a)zin-, -(a)zol-, -(a)zon-	presence of nitrogen in the heterocyclic compounds	Azaleptĭnum, i n Phthivazĭdum, i n Sulfapyridazĭnum, i n Norsulfazŏlum, i n Sibazŏnum, i n	azaleptin phthivazid sulfapyridazin norsulfazol sibazon
-benz-	presence of benzene ring	Benzohexonium, i n benzoĭcus, a, um	benzohexon benzoic
-cyan-	cyanic acid, its anions or a cyan group	Cyanocobalamĭnum, i n cyanĭdum, i n	cyanocobala-mine cyanide
-hydr-, -hyd-	presence of hydrogen, water or a hydroxyl group	Hydrogenium, i n Formaldehyĉdum, i n	hydrogen formaldehyde
-naphth-	products of petroleum	NaphthalĀnum, i n Naphthyzĭnum, i n	naphthalan naphthyzin
-oxy-	presence of oxygen and its compounds	Chinoxydĭnum, i n Oxylidĭnum, i n	chinoxydin oxylidin
-phtha(l)-	derivatives of phthalic acid	Phthalazŏlum, i n Phthazŏlum, i n	phthalazol phthazol
-phthor-	presence of fluorine compounds	Phthorocortum, i n Phthoracizĭnum, i n	phthoracizin phthorocort
-sulf-	presence of sulphur or its derivatives	Norsulfazŏlum, i n sulfas, ātis m	norsulphazol sulphate
-thi-	presence of sulphur atom in the names of thiosalts and thioacids	ThiopentĀlum, i n thiosulfas, ātis m	thiopental thiosulphate
-yl-	presence of	Benzympenicillĭnum, i n	benzylpenicillin

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
	carbohydrogenic radicals	salicylicus, a, um	salicylic

§ 102. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into English:

Acidum arsenicosum anhydricum; Acidum ascorbinicum in dragées; Cyanocobalaminum seu Vitamimum B₁₂; Emplastrum Plumbi simplex; Emulsum Erythrophosphatidi in ampullis; Phthalazolium in tabulettis; Pulvis Magnesii oxydi; Sirupus Aloës cum Ferro; Sulfacylum solubile pro injectionibus; Suspensio Hydrocortisoni in flaconibus; Tabulettae Acidi folici; Tabulettae Acidi acetylsalicylici enterosolubiles.

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:

ascorbic acid in dragee; coated tablets of glutaminic acid; clear hydrochloric acid; diluted solution of hydrogen peroxide; emulsion of castor oil; granules of furazolidon for children; powder of foxglove leaves; solution of nicotinic acid; solution of soluthizon for intratracheal injection; spirituous solution of iodine for internal use; suspension of aluminium hydroxide; tablets of lipoic acid; thioacetazon in tablets; white powder of sulphadimidine; yellow mercury oxide.

3. Give the dictionary form both of the nouns and the adjectives, translate the medical prescriptions:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Take: Tablets of phthalazol 0,05
number 20
Give. Write on the label: | 2. Take: Naphthalan ointment 50,0
Let it be given
Let it be labelled: |
| 3. Take: Clear hydrochloric acid 6,0
Distilled water up to 100 ml
Let it be mixed | 4. Take: Purified sulphur
Peach oil of each 30,0
Let it be mixed |

Let it be given
Let it be labelled:

Let it be sterilized!
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:

5. Take: Streptocide
Sulphadimezin
Norsulphazol of each 5,0
Mix to make the finest
powder
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:

6. Take: Glutaminic acid 1,5
Solution of glucose 25 %
– 450 ml
Mix
Give
Write on the label:

7. Take: Menthol 0,1
Zinc oxide
Boric acid of each 0,5
Vaseline 10,0
Mix to make an ointment
Give
Write on the label:

8. Take: Boric acid 5,0
Zinc oxide
Wheat starch of each 25,0
Ointment of naphthalan
45,0
Mix to make a paste
Give. Write on the label:

9. Take: Ascorbic acid 0,2
Nicotinic acid
Riboflavin of each 0,25
Distilled water up to 100 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:

10. Take: Yellow hydrogen oxide 0,6
Ichthyol 0,8
Zinc ointment 20,0
Mix to make a paste
Give
Write on the label:

11. Take: Extract of belladonna 0,015
Powder of rhubarb root
Magnesium oxide of each 0,3
Mix to make a powder

12. Take: Salicylic acid
Lactic acid of each 6,0
Icy acetic acid 3,0
Collodium up to 20,0
Mix

Give such doses

in the amount 10

Give

Write on the label:

Write on the label:

§ 103. Vocabulary to lesson 17

I. Latin – English vocabulary

acetylsalicȳlicus, a, um	acetylsalicylic
acĭdum, i n	acid
Aloë, ës f	aloe
anhydrĭcus, a, um	anhydrous
arsenicōsus, a, um	arsenous
ascorbinĭcus, a, um	ascorbic
Cyanocobalamĭnum, i n	cyanocobalamin
depurātus, a, um	purified
dragée, dragées	dragee, dragees
emplastrum, i n	plaster
emulsum, i n	emulsion
enterosolubĭlis, e	enteric soluble
Erythrophosphatĭdum, i n	erythrophosphatide
Ferrum, i n	iron
flaco, ōnis m	phial
folĭcus, a, um	folic
Hydrocortisōnum, i n	hydrocortisone
Magnesium, i n	magnesium
Naphthalānum, i n	naphthalan
Norsulfazōlum, i n	norsulphazol
oxŷdum, i n	oxide
Phthalazōlum, i n	phthalazol
Plumbum, i n	lead
Riboflavĭnum, i n	riboflavin

Ricīnus, i m	castor-oil plant
seu	or
simplex, ĩcis	simple
solubĭlis, e	soluble
Streptocĭdum, i n	streptocide
Sulfacĭlum, i n	sulfacyl
Sulfur, ũris n	sulphur
suspensio, ōnis f	suspension
vitamĭnum, i n	vitamin

II. English –Latin vocabulary

acetic	acetĭcus, a, um
acid	acĭdum, i n
aluminium	Aluminium, i n
ascorbic	ascorbinĭcus, a, um
boric	borĭcus, a, um
castor oil	oleum Ricĭni
castor oil plant	Ricĭnus, i m
clear	purus, a, um
coated	obductus, a, um
collodium	Collodium, i n
diluted	dilŭtus, a, um
distilled	destillĀtus, a, um
drops	dragĕes
emulsion	emulsum, i n
finest	subtilissĭmus, a, um
furazolidon	Furazolidŏnum, i n
glutaminic	glutaminĭcus, a, um
hydrochloric	hydrochlorĭcus, a, um
hydrogen	Hydrogenium, i n

hydroxide	hydroxŷdum, i n
icy	glaciālis, e
ichthyol	Ichthyōlum, i n
internal	internus, a, um
intratracheal	intratracheālis, e
iodine	Iōdum, i n
lactic	lactīcus, a, um
lipoic	lipoīcus, a, um
mercury	Hydrargŷrum, i n
naphthalan	Naphthalānum, i n
nicotinic	nicotinīcus, a, um
oxide	oxŷdum, i n
paste	pasta, ae f
peach	Persīcum, i n
peach oil	Oleum Persicōrum
peroxide	peroxŷdum, i n
phthalazol	Phthalazōlum, i n
purified	purificātus, a, um
rhubarb	Rheum, i n
riboflavin	Riboflavīnum, i n
root	radix, īcis f
salicylic	salicŷlīcus, a, um
soluthizon	Soluthizōnum, i n
spirituous	spirituōsus, a, um
starch	Amŷlum, i n
sulphadimezin	Sulfadimezīnum, i n
sulphadimidine	Sulfadimidīnum, i n
suspension	suspensio, ōnis f
thioacetazone	Thioacetazonum, i n
vaseline	Vaselīnum, i n

use	usus, us m
water	aqua, ae f
wheat	Triticum, i n
white	albus a, um
yellow	flavus, a, um

Lesson 18

LATIN NAMES OF SALTS ON THE LABELS OF DRUG NAMES AND IN MEDICAL PRESCRIPTIONS

§ 104. Latin names of salts, whose anions contain oxygen

Latin names of salts consist of two parts. First goes the Genitive case of a cation (a chemical element name or, more seldom, a drug name), in the second place is the Nominative of an anion. Anion names are always written with a small letter. If we speak of anions derivatives of acids containing oxygen of different degrees, two variants of these anions are distinguished:

1. Names of anions containing the greatest amount of oxygen are masculine nouns of the third declension with the endings **-as** in the Nominative and **-ātis** in the Genitive singular: Na_2SO_4 – Natrii sulfas → sulfas, ātis m:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na_2SO_4	Natrii sulfas	sulfas, ātis m	sulphate	sodium sulphate
NaNO_3	Natrii nitras	nitras, ātis m	nitrate	sodium nitrate

So, one can very easily find out the correlation between English and Latin anion names of the first group: the English ending **-ate** corresponds to the Latin ending **-as**. In this way we may instantly determine Latin equivalents of English anions without analyzing their chemical composition, including all the anions of organic acids having the ending **-ate** too:

sodium salicylate – Natrii salicylas

testosterone propionate – Testosterōni propionas

2. The names of anions containing lesser amount of oxygen are masculine nouns of the third declension with the endings **-is** in the Nominative and **-ītis** in the Genitive singular: Na_2SO_3 – Natrii sulfis → sulfis, ītis m:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na_2SO_3	Natrii sulfis	sulfis, ītis m	sulphite	sodium sulphite
NaNO_2	Natrii nitris	nitris, ītis m	nitrite	sodium nitrite

As you can see, the Latin anion ending **-is** corresponds to the English anion ending **-ite**, and it allows, as it is seen above, to determine any necessary equivalent taking as well into consideration the spelling of each separate word.

§ 105. Latin names of salts whose anions do not contain oxygen

The names of anions which don't contain oxygen are neutral nouns of the second declension with the suffix **-id-** and the ending **-um**:

Chemical symbol of the salt	Latin name of the salt	The anion and its dictionary form	English equivalent of the anion name	English equivalent of the salt name
Na_2S	Natrii sulfidum	sulfidum, i n	sulphide	sodium

				sulphide
NaCl	Natrii chlorīdum	chlorīdum, i n	chloride	sodium chloride

So, the complex ending **-īdum** of the Latin anions which don't contain oxygen corresponds to the English ending **-ide** in the anions with the similar chemical compound.

Conclusion: if you remember the endings of the three seen above variants of Latin anions and if you know which Latin anion ending corresponds to the English one, you do not need to know the chemical compound of any salt to express correctly both English and Latin salt name.

§ 106. Anion names of basic salts

Latin anion names of basic salts are formed by adding the prefix **sub-**:

Bismūthi subnītras – basic nitrate of bismuth

Aluminii subacētas – basic acetate of aluminium

§ 107. Two-component names of potassium and sodium salts

Two-component Latin names of potassium and sodium salts are written with a hyphen. Each component of such a name is a neutral noun of the second declension. The second component following the hyphen is written with a small letter. In the dictionary form, after the two-component Nominative cases the ending **-i** and the gender sign **n** follow. English equivalents of these terms are written without a hyphen:

Sulfacylum-natrium, i n – sulphacyl sodium

Benzylpenicillīnum- kalium, i n – benzylpenicillin potassium

§ 108. Morphological roots reflecting pharmaceutical information

Morphological roots	Meaning	Latin examples	English equivalents
-aeth-	presence of ethyl group	aethylīcus, a, um Aethynālum, i n	ethylic etynal
-lysin-, -lytin-	removing some destructive factor	Phytolysīnum, i n Broncholytīnum, i n	phytolysin broncholytin
-meth-	presence of methyl group	Methylēnum, i n Methylium, i n	methylen methyl
-morph-	analgetics, derivatives of morphine	Apomorphīnum, i n Morpholongum, i n	apomorphin morpholong
-phen-	presence of phenyl group	Phenōlum, i n Phthorophenazīnum, in	phenol phthorophe- nazin
-phthi-	antitubercular effect	Phthivazīdum, i n Phthizopyrāmum, i n	ftivazide phthizopyram
-poly-	large number, multitude	polyvitaminōsus, a,um Polyamīnum, i n	multivitaminous polyamin
-thromb-	thrombolytics, against thrombosis	Thrombīnum, i n Thrombocytīnum, i n	thrombin thrombocytin

§ 109. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from Latin into English:

Aether stabilisātus pro narcōsi; Barii sulfas pro rentgēno; Cerebrolysīnum in ampullis ad usum parenterālem; Emulsum Benzylīi benzoātis medicinālis; Granūla Aethazōli-natrii pro infantibus; Membranūlae ophthalmīcae cum Atropīni sulfāte; Methylēnum coeruleum in capsulis; Phenylii saliclas in tabulettis; Pulvis Phenoxyethylpenicillīni pro suspensiōne; Solutio Aethacidīni lactātis spirituōsa; Species polyvitaminōsae et pectorāles; Tabulettae Calcii orotātis;

Theobrominum-natrium cum Natrii salicylate; Spiritus aethylicus rectificatus;
 Vitamīnum B₆ seu Pyridoxini hydrochloridum

2. Give the dictionary form of each word, translate from English into Latin:

basic acetate of lead; basic nitrate of bismuth with belladonna extract; coated tablets of tetracycline hydrochloride; hypertonic solution of sodium chloride; isotonic solution of sodium chloride; morpholong for intramuscular injections; ointment of copper citrate; ophthalmic films with fibrinolysin; polyethylenoxide for intravenous use; powder of sarcolysin for solution; precipitated calcium carbonate; rectified ethylic spirit; solution of terrilytin for inhalation; suppositories of methyluracil; syrup of broncholytin in phials; tablets of ethylmorphine hydrochloride for adults; tablets of phthivazid.

3. Give the dictionary form of both nouns and adjectives; translate the medical prescriptions:

1. Take	Structure of spring pheasant's eye herb	2. Take:	Extract of belladonna 0,001
	180 m		Basic bismuth nitrate
	Amidopyrin 2,0		Phenyl salicylate of each
	Sodium bromide 4,0		0,25
	Codeine phosphate 0,2		Mix to make a powder
	Mix		Give such doses in
	Give		the amount 10
	Write on the label:		Write on the label:

Ethylmorphine hydrochloride	4. Take:	Rectified ethyl spirit 95 %
		- 20 ml
Vaseline 10,0		Water for injections 100 ml
Mix to make an ointment		Let it be mixed
Give.		Let it be given

5. Take:	Platyphylline hydrotartrate	6. Take:	Dimedrol 0,01
	0,005		Ephedrin hydrochloride 0,1

Phenobarbital
Papaverin hydrochloride of
each 0,02
Give such a dose in
the amount 10
Write on the label:

Peach oil 10 ml
Mint oil I drop
Mix
Give
Write on the label:

7. Take: Coated tablets of
Oleando and omycin
phosphate 0,125
number 25
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:

8. Take: Ophthalmic films with
neomycin sulphate
number 10
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:

9. Take: Morphine hydrochloride
0,015
Apomorphine hydrochloride
0,05
Diluted hydrochloric acid 1ml
Distilled water up to 2000 ml
Let it be mixed
Let it be given
Let it be labelled:

10. Take: Magnesium carbonate 4,0
Potassium carbonate 5,0
Sodium hydrocarbonate 1,0
Glycerin in sufficient
amount
Mix to make a paste
Give
Write on the label:

11. Take : Menthol
Ethylmorphine hydrochloride
of each 200 ml
Sugar 0, 03
Mix to make a powder
Give such a dose
in amount 10
Write on the label:

12. Take: Tincture of althea root
180 ml Sodium
hydrocarbonate
Sodium benzoate of each 5,0
Simple syrup 20,0
Mix.
Give.
Write on the label:

§ 110. Vocabulary to lesson 18

I. Latin – English vocabulary

Aethacridīnum, i n	ethacridine
aethylīcus, a, um	ethyl
aether, ěris m	ether
Aethazōlum-natrium, i n	ethazol sodium
Althaea, ae f	althea
Apomorphinum, i n	apomorphine
Atropīnum, i n	atropin
benzoas, ātis m	benzoate
Benzylum, i n	benzyl
Calcium, i n	calcium
Cerebrolysīnum, i n	cerebrolysin
coeruleus, a, um	blue
hydrochlorīdum, i n	hydrochloride
lactas, ātis m	lactate
medicinālis, e	medical
Methylēnum, i n	methylen
orōtas, ātis m	orotate
parenterālis, e	parenteral
pectorālis, e	pectoral
Phenoxymethylpenicillīnum, i n	phenoxymethylpenicillin
Phenylīnum, i n	phenyl
polyvitaminōsus, a, um	polyvitaminous
Pyridoxīnum, i n	pyridoxine
rentgēnum, i n	roentgenoscopy
salicylas, ātis m	salicylate
sulfas, ātis m	sulphate

Natrium, i n	sodium
spirituōsus, a, um	spirituous
spirītus, us m	spirit
suspensio, ōnis f	suspension
Theobrominum-natrium, i n	theobromine sodium
vernālis, e	existing in spring
vitamīnum, i n	vitamin

II. English – Latin vocabulary

amidopyrin	Amidopyrīnum, i n
apomorphine	Apomorphīnum, i n
basic acetate	subacētas, ātis m
basic nitrate	subnītras, ātis m
belladonna	Belladonna, ae f
benzoate	benzoas, ātis m
bismuth	Bismūthum, i n
bromide	bromīdum, i n
broncholytin	Broncholytīnum, i n
calcium	Calcium, i n
carbonate	carbōnas, ātis m
chloride	chlorīdum, i n
citrate	citras, ātis m
codeine	Codeīnum, i n
copper	Cuprum, i n
diluted	dilūtus, a, um
dimedrol	Dimedrōlum, i n
ethylmorphine	Aethylmorphīnum, i n
fibrinolysin	Fibrolysīnum, i n
film	lamella, ae f; membranūla, ae f
glycerin	Glycerīnum, i n

hydrocarbonate	hydrocarbōnas, atis m
hydrochloride	hydrochlorīdum, i n
hypertonic	hypertonīcus, a, um
inhalation	inhalatio, ōnis f
intramuscular	intramusculāris, e
intravenous	intravenōsus, a, um
isotonic	isotonīcus, a, um
lead	Plumbum, i n
magnesium	Magnesium, i n
menthol	Menthōlum, i n
morphine	Morphīnum, i n
neomycin	Neomycīnum, i n
papaverine	Papaverīnum, i n
peach	Persīcum, i n
peach oil	Oleum Persicōrum
phenobarbital	Phenobarbitālum, i n
phenyl	Phenylum, i n
phosphate	phosphas, ātis m
phthivazid	Phthivazīdum, i n
platyphylline	Platyphyllīnum, i n
polyethylenoxide	Polyaethylenoxīdum, i n
potassium	Kalium, i n
precipitated	praecipitātus, a, um
salicylate	salicylas, ātis m
sarcolysin	Sarcolysīnum, i n
sodium	Natrium, i n
spring Adonis (= spring pheasant's eye)	Adōnis (īdis m, f) vernālis (is, e)
spirit	spirītus, us m
sugar	Sacchārum, i n
syrup	sirūpus, i m

terrilytin

Terrilytīnum, i n

vaseline

Vaselīnum, i n

§ 111. Model (Sample) of the final test in pharmaceutical terminology

1. Write down the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents:

- 1) mercury 2) basic acetate 3) mint 4) oxide 5) rhubarb 6) sugar
7) sunflower 8) glucose 9) peach 10) chloroform

2. Give the dictionary form of each word and translate into Latin:

- 1) decoction of oak bark 2) powder of foxglove leaves 3) dry extract of licorice
4) camphoric spirit for trituration 5) eryhaem in glass phials 6) coated tablets of glutaminic acid 7) emulsion of castor oil 8) precipitated calcium carbonate

3. Write down the dictionary form of the nouns and adjectives and translate the following prescriptions into Latin:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Take: Ichthyol 3,0 | 2. Take: Clear hydrochloric acid 6,0 |
| Vaseline up to 30,0 | Distilled water up to 100 ml |
| Mix to make an ointment | Let it be mixed |
| Give | Let it be given |
| Write on the label: | Let it be labelled: |
| 3. Take: Ophthalmic films with
neomycin number 8 | 4. Take: Tincture of althea root 180 ml
Sodium hydrocarbonate |
| Let it be given Sodium benzoate of each 5,0 | |
| Let it be labelled: | |

LATIN – ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

acetylsalicylicus, a, um acetyl-
salicylic

acidum, i n acid

ad (Acc.) for

ad usum externum to be taken

externally

ad usum internum to be taken

internally

ad usum parenteralem to be taken

parenterally

adultus, a, um adult

Aethacridinum, i n ethacridine

Aethazolium-natrium, i n ethazol

sodium

aether, ěris m ether

aethylicus, a, um ethylic

Aloë, ěs f aloe

Althaea, ae f althea

ampulla, ae f ampoule

Anaesthesolum, i n anaesthesol

anhydricus, a, um anhydrous

Apomorphinum, i n apomorphine

arsenicosus, a, um arsenous

ascorbinicus, a, um ascorbic

Aspirinum, i n aspirin

Atropinum, i n atropine

B

Barium, i n barium

benzoas, ātis m benzoate

Benzylum, i n benzyl

C

Calcium, i n calcium

capsula, ae f capsule

Cerebrolysinum, i n cerebrolysin

coeruleus, a, um blue

Corglyconum, i n corglycon

crystallisatus, a, um crystal

cum (Abl.) with

Cyanocobalaminum, i n cyano-
cobalamin

D

depuratus, a, um purified

Dibiomycinum, i n dibiomycine

Dicainum, i n dicain

dragées drops

E

emplastrum, i n plaster
emulsum, i n emulsion
enterosolubīlis, e enteric soluble
Erycyclīnum, i n erycycline
Erythrophosphatīdum, i n
erythrophosphatide
et and
Eucalyptus, i f eucalyptus
Euphyllīnum, i n euphylline
ex (Abl.) from, of
extractum, i n extract

F

Ferrum, i n iron
flaco, ōnis m phial
fluīdus, a, um liquid
folīcus, a, um folic
folium, i n leaf
fructus, us m fruit

G

Glucōsum, i n glucose
Glycyramum, i n glycyram
granūlum, i n granule
gutta, ae f drop

H

haemostaticus, a, um haemostatic
Helianthus, i m sunflower
hydrochlorīdum, i n
hydrochloride

Hydrocortisōnum, i n
hydrocortisone

I

in (Abl.) in
infans, ntis m, f child
infusio, ōnis f infusion
injectio, ōnis f injection
intravenōsus, a, um intravenous

L

lactas, ātis m lactate
lamella, ae f film (ophthalmic)
Leonūrus, i m motherwort
linimentum, i n liniment

M

Magnesium, i n magnesium
medicinālis, e medical
membranūla, ae f film
Methylēnum, i n methylene

N

Naphthalānum, i n naphthalan
narcōsis, is f narcosis
Natrium, i n sodium
Norsulfazōlum, i n norsulphazol

O

obductus, a, um coated

Oestradiolum, i n oestradiol

oleum, i n oil

~ **Menthae** mint oil

~ **Persicorum** peach oil

ophthalmicus, a, um ophthalmic

orotas, atis m orotate

oxydum, i n oxide

P

parenterālis, e parenteral

pectorālis, e pectoral

Phenoxymethylpenicillinum, i n

phenoxymethylpenicillin

Phenylum, i n phenyl

Phthalazolum, i n phthalazol

Phytinum, i n phytin

Phytomenadiolum, i n phytomenadion

Plumbum, i n lead

polyvitaminosus, a, um polyvitaminous

pro (Abl.) for

pulvis, ěris m powder

Pyridoxinum i n pyridoxine

Pyromecainum, i n pyromecain

Q

quantum satis in sufficient amount

Quercus, us f oak

R

radix, ĩcis f root

rectificatus, a, um rectified

rentgenum, i n roentgenoscopy

rhizoma, atis n rhizome

Riboflavinum, i n riboflavin

Ricinus, i m castor oil plant

Rifathyroinum, i n rifathyroin

Rosa, ae f dog rose, wild rose

S

salicylas, atis m salicylate

seu or

simplex, ĩcis simple

sirupus, i m syrup

solubilis, e soluble

solutio, onis f solution

species, ěrum f species

spirituosus, a, um spirituous

spiritus, us m spirit, alcohol

spongia, ae f sponge

stabilisatus, a, um stabilized

Streptocidum, i n streptocide

Sulfacylum, i n sulfacyl

sulfas, atis m sulphate

Sulfur, ũris n sulphur

suppositorium, i n suppository

suspensio, onis f suspension

Synthomycinum, i n synthomycine

T

tabuleta, ae f tablet

Testosterōnum, i n testosterone

Theobrominum-natrium, i n

theobromine sodium

Theophedrīnum, i n theophedrin

Theophyllinum, i n theophylline

Thymalīnum, i n thymalin

Thyreoidīnum, i n thyreoidin

tinctūra, ae f tincture

U

unguentum, i n ointment

usus, us m use

V

vaginālis, e vaginal

Valeriāna, ae f valerian

vernālis, e existing in spring

vitamīnum, i n vitamin

vitreus, a, um vitreous

vitrum, i n phial, glass

ENGLISH – LATIN VOCABULARY

A

acetic acetīcus, a um

acid acīdum, i n

Adonis Adōnis, ĩdis m,f

Adonis vernalis (= **sping pheasant's eye**) Adōnis (ĩdis m, f) vernālis (is, e)

adult adultus, i m; adultus, a, um

aerosol aērosōlum, i n

allochol Allochōlum, i n

althea Althaea, ae f

aluminium Aluminium, i n

amidopyrin Amidopyrīnum, i n

amount numerus, i m

ampoule ampulla, ae f

anaesthesin Anaesthesinum, i n

antiasthmatic antiasthmaticus, a, um

antipyrin Antipyrīnum, i n

apomorphine Apomorphīnum, i n

ascorbic ascorbinīcus, a, um

B

bark cortex, ĩcis m

basic acetate subacētas, ātis m

basic nitrate subnītras, ātis m

belladonna Belladonna, ae f

benzoate benzoas, ātis m

bismuth Bismūthum, i n

boric borīcus, a, um

bromide bromīdum, i n

broncholytin Broncholytīnum, i n

C

calcium Calcium, i n

camphomen “Camphomēnum”

(Camphomēnum, i n)

camphoric camphorātus, a, um

capsule capsūla, ae f

carbonate carbōnas, ātis m

castor plant Ricīnus, i m

castor oil Oleum Ricīni

children infantes, ium m, f

chloride chlorīdum, i n

chloroform Chloroformium, i n

citrate citras, ātis m

clear purus, a, um

coated obductus, a, um

cocoa Cacāo (without a dictionary
form)

cocoa oil Oleum Cacao

codeine Codeīnum, i n

collagen collagenīcus, a, um

collodium Collodium, i n
compound composĭtus, a, um
copper Cuprum, i n
cortex cortex, ĭcis m

D

decoction decoctum, i n
diluted dilŭtus, a, um
dimedrol Dimedrŏlum, in
distilled destillātus, a, um
dose dosis, is f
dragee dragée
drop gutta, ae f
dry siccus, a, um

E

emulsion emulsum, i n
ephatin Ephatĭnum, i n
eryhaem Eryhaemum, i n
erynit Erynĭtum, i n
erythromycin Erythromycinum, i n
ether aether, ěris m
eucalyptus Eucalyptus, i f
extract extractum, i n

F

feracryl “Feracrĭlum” (Feracrĭlum, i

n)

fibrinolysin Fibrinolysīnum, i n

film lamella, ae f; membranŭla, ae f

finest subtilissīmus, a, um

flax Linum, i n

flower flos, floris m

for pro (Abl.); ad (Acc.)

foxglove Digitālis, is f

furazolidone Furazolidōnum, i n

G

glass 1) vitrum, i n 2) vitreus, a, um

glucose Glucōsum, i n

glutaminic glutaminīcus, a, um

glyceric glycerinōsus, a, um

glycerin Glycerīnum, i n

glycin Glycīnum, i n

granule granŭlum, i n

H

haemophobin Haemophobīnum, i n

haemostatic haemostatīcus, a, um

hawthorn Crataegus, i f

herb herba, ae f

hydrocarbonate hydrocarbōnas, ātis m

hydrochloric hydrochlorīcus, a um

hydrochloride hydrochlorīdum, i n

hydrogen Hydrogenium, i n
hydrotartrate hydrotartras, ātis m
hydroxide hydroxĭdum, i n
hypertonic hypertonicus, a, um

I

ichthyol Ichthyolum, i n
icy glaciālis, e
in in (in pharmaceutical terms with
Ablative)
inhalation inhalatio, ōnis f
injection injectio, ōnis f
in sufficient amount quantum
satis
internal internus, a, um
intramuscular intramusculāris, e
intranasal intranasālis, e
intratracheal intratracheālis, e
intravenous intravenōsus, a, um
introduction inductio, ōnis f
iodine Iōdum, i n
isotonic isotonĭcus, a, um

L

lactic lactĭcus, a, um
lead Plumbum, i n
leaf folium, i n

licorice Glycyrrhīza, ae f
lily of the valley Convallaria, ae f
liniment linimentum, i n
lipoic lipoīcus, a, um
liquid fluīdus, a,um

M

magnesium Magnesium, i n
matricary Chamomilla, ae f
medicinal medicinālis, e
menthol Menthōlum, i n
mercury Hydrargyrum, i n
methyluracil Methyluracīlum, i n
mint Mentha, ae f
morphine Morphīnum, i n
morpholong Morpholongum, i n
mycoseptin Mycoseptīnum, i n

N

naphthalan Naphthalānum, i n
narcosis narcōsis, is f
neomycin Neomycīnum, i n
nicotinic nicotinīcus, a, um
norsulphazol Norsulfazōlum, i n
nitroglycerin Nitroglycerīnum, i n
number numērus, i m

O

oak Quercus, us f

oestradiol Oestradiolum, i n

of each ana

oil oleum, i n

oily oleosus, a, um

ointment unguentum, i n

oleandomycin Oleandomycinum, i n

ophthalmic ophthalmicus, a, um

oxide oxidum, i n

P

packet fascis, is m

papaverine Papaverinum, i n

paste pasta, ae f

peach Persicum, i n

peach oil Oleum Persicorum

pectoral pectoralis, e

pepper piperitum, a, um

phenobarbital Phenobarbitalum, i n

phenyl Phenylum, i n

phial vitrum, i n

phosphate phosphas, ātis m

phthalazol Phthalazolium, i n

phthivazid Phthivazidum, i n

phytomenadion Phytomenadionum, i n

plaster emplastrum, i n

plastic polyaethylenīcus, a, um
platyphylline Platyphyllinīnum, i n
polyethylenoxid Polyaethylenoxī-
dum, i n
potassium Kalium. i n
powder pulvis, ěris m
precipitated praecipitātus, a, um
pregoestrol Praegoestrōlum, i n
purified (about solid substances)
purificātus, a um

R

rectal rectālis, e
rectified (about liquid substances)
rectificātus, a, um
rhizome rhizōma, ātis n
rhubarb Rheum, i n
riboflavin Riboflavīnum, i n
radix, īcis f

S

salicylate salicȳlas, ātis m
salicylic salicylīcus, a, um
sarcolysin Sarcolysīnum, i n
seed semen, ĩnis n
simple simplex, ĩcis
sodium Natrium, i n

soluble solubīlis, e
soluthizone Soluthizōnum, i n
solution solutio, ōnis f
species species, ērum f (only plur.)
spirit (alcohol) spirītus, us m
spirituous spirituōsus, a, um
sponge spongia, ae f
spring vernālis, e
starch Amŷlum, i n
streptocide Streptocīdum, i n
strophanthine Strophanthīnum, i n
strophanthus Strophanthus, i m
sublingual sublinguālis, e
such talis, e
sugar Sacchārum, i n
sulphadimezine Sulfadimezīnum, i n
sulphadimidine Sulfadimidīnum, i n
sulphate sulfas, ātis m
sulphur sulfur, ŷris n
sunflower Helianthus, i m
sunflower oil Oleum Helianthi
synoestrol Synoestrōlum, i n
synthomycin Synthomycīnum, i n
suppository suppositorium, i n
suspension suspensio, ōnis f
syrup sirūpus, i m

T

tablet tabuletta, ae f

tea thea, ae f

terrilytine Terrilytīnum, i n

tetracycline Tetracyclīnum, i n

testoenat Testoenātum, i n

theophylline Theophyllīnum, i n

thioacetazone Thioacetazōnum, i n

thymogen Thymogĕnum, i n

thyroidin Thyreoidīnum, i n

tincture tinctūra, ae f

tritulating (= trituration)

trituratīo, ōnis f

U

up to ad

use usus, us m

V

vaginal vaginālis, e

valerian Valeriāna, ae f

vaseline Vaselīnum, i n

vitreous vitreus, a, um

W

water aqua, ae f

wheat Tritīcum, i n

white albus, a, um

with cum (Abl.)

Y

yellow flavus, a, um

Z

zinc Zincum, i n

Part IV. CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY

Lesson 19

INTRODUCTION TO LATIN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY.

ONE - WORD TERMS AND THEIR MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE.

INITIAL AND FINAL MORPHOLOGICAL ELEMENTS USED FOR WORD

BUILDING. NAMES OF BRANCHES OF MEDICINE AND MEDICAL

SPECIALISTS. NAMES OF MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS

§ 112. General remarks on Latin clinical terminology

Clinical names are the most numerous among all medical terms, as these names signify a huge amount of different diseases, pathological conditions and abnormalities, medical examinations and operations. This terminology also includes a great amount of paramedical vocabulary. It is estimated that about 50 % of English medical terms are of Greek origin, but this relation is particularly evident in clinical terms.

The word **clinical** itself is of Greek origin (*klinike* means bed) and it is the acknowledgement of the important role of Greek physicians in both theoretical and practical medicine. Thanks to Greek physicians many diseases got their names and via Latin became a part of European medical languages. New clinical names coming into use were built, as a rule, on the basis of Greek vocabulary and Greek morphological elements. The grammar form of new clinical terms corresponds to the norms of Latin or some European languages. This historical tradition, in particular, is followed in English. For example:

Latin	English	Meaning
-------	---------	---------

adenītis	adenitis	inflammation of a gland
cardiopathia	cardiopathy	disease of the heart
osteōma	osteoma	tumour made up of bone tissue

It is indisputable that clinical terms composed on the basis of Greek morphological elements have a very important advantage: they are short, but may stand for a large clinical definition. That is why they are the priority choice of the physicians all over the world, and everyone who has a M. D. must know the rules of word building of medical terms and learn lexical and morphological word building elements.

§ 113. The morphological structure of one-word clinical terms

From the point of view of their morphological structure, one-word clinical terms can be: 1) simple, containing only one stem and 2) compound, consisting of two or more morphological elements.

About 15 % clinical names belong to the first group, e. g. *asthma*, ātis n – *asthma*; *cancer*, cri m – *cancer*; *herpes*, ětis m – *herpes*; *ulcus*, ěris n – *ulcer*. These noun-terms are mostly used in combination with adjectives or nouns: *asthma bronchiāle* – *bronchial asthma*; *ulcus gastris* – *ulcer of the stomach*.

The majority of one-word clinical terms consist of two or more morphological elements. These elements can be expressed by:

I. Greek affixes (prefixes, suffixes) and roots of nouns or adjectives. In this case, the name can contain:

I.1. A prefix, a root, a suffix and an ending (mostly - **ia**, -**ēma**, -**ismus**, -**ītis**, -**ōma**, -**ōsis**):

parametrītis, ĭdis f – parametritis (tissue inflammation near uterus). The name includes: a) the prefix **para-** (near) b) the root **metr-** (uterus) c) the suffix **-ītis**

(combination of suffix **-it-** and ending **-is**) with the constant meaning of “inflammation”;

I.2. A prefix, one or more roots and an ending:

atrichia, ae f – atrichia (lack of hair). The name includes: a) the prefix **a-** (absence, lack, cessation of a function) b) the root **trich-** (hair) c) the ending **-ia**;

hypermetropia, ae f – hypermetropia (long-sightedness). The name includes: a) the prefix **hyper-** (excessive function) b) the root **- metr-** (measurement) c) the final root **-opia** (sight);

I.3. A root and a suffix (suffixed ending): **chondrōma, ātis n** – chondroma (tumour of cartilaginous tissue). The name includes: a) the root **chondr-** (cartilage) b) the suffix **-ōma** with the meaning “tumour”(= tumor).

2. The initial and final word building roots in combination with the term endings **-ia, -ēma, -ismus, -ītis, -ōma, -ōsis, -us**. If the initial word building root hereby ends up with a consonant and the final one begins with a consonant too, these roots are joined via a connecting vowel **-o-**:

rhinopathia, ae f – rhinopathy (disease of the nose). The name includes: 1) the root **rhin-** (nose) 2) the connecting vowel **-o-** 3) the root **path-** (disease);

otorhinolaryngolōgus, i m – otorhinolaryngologist (the doctor for treating ear, nose and larynx diseases). The name includes: a) the root **ot-** (ear) b) the root **rhin-** (nose) c) the root **laryng-** (larynx) d) the final root **-logus** (a medical specialist).

If the first root ends with a vowel, the connecting **-o-** is usually omitted:

pelvimetria, ae f – pelvimetry (pelvis measurement);

tachycardia, ae f – tachycardia (abnormally fast heart rate).

If the second root begins with a vowel, the connecting **-o-** as a rule is omitted too:

haemat + uria → **haematuria, ae f** – hematuria (blood in the urine);

odont + algia → **odontalgia**, **ae f** – odontalgia (toothache, feeling of pain in the tooth).

Though there are some exceptions from this rule: e. g. the roots **broncho-** and **bronchi-** never lose their final vowels: **bronchiectasia**, **ae f** (= bronchoectasia) – bronchiectasis (expansion of the bronchi); **bronchoadenitis**, **itīdis f** – bronchoadenitis (inflammation of lymphatic glands). The root **bi-** is always used with the connecting -o-: biocycle, biology, microbiology, biopharmaceutics.

§ 114. Some notes on the word stressing in clinical names

In the compound nouns with the ending **-ia** the last but one vowel «**i**» is, as a rule, stressed contrary to the rule «vowel before vowel is short»: atrichía, bronchiectasía, haematuría, hypermetropía, odontalgía, rhinopathía. The noun **anatómia** (anatomy) and nouns with the final element **-logia** keep the third syllable from the end stressed: cardiología (cardiology), neurológia (neurology), fisiología (physiology).

§ 115. Initial and final root elements

Initial root elements are combined in a one-word term, as you could see above, with the final roots via the connecting vowel -o- or with the final suffixes. These roots are presented in the table of each lesson in the following consequence: 1) the Greek root 2) its Latin equivalent in the dictionary form 3) English meaning 4) English clinical word element:

ger-, geront-	senex, is m	1) old man	2) old age	ger-, geront-
---------------	-------------	------------	------------	---------------

Initial roots can have two or more variants: ger-, geront- (old man or old age); haem-, haemat- (blood). All these variants are to be learnt by heart.

Final root elements are not as numerous as initial ones, but their word building capacity is very high. One should also remember that the final root or suffixed word building element comes first in the literal translation of the term, for example:

The term nephrographia, ae f consists of the initial root **nephr-** (kidney) and the final root **-graphia** (X-ray examination), so the literal translation is “X-ray examination of the kidneys”, nephrography.

The term myōma, ātis n consists of the initial root **my-** (muscle) and the final root **-oma** (tumour), so the literal translation is “tumour of muscular tissue”, myoma.

Final root elements can be part of an adjective too, e. g.: **-gēnus, a, um** in the **term** biogēnus, a, um – biogenic (caused by a living organism).

The final roots are presented at each lesson in the table like that:

-logus – a specialist in a brunch of science or medicine

-iāter – a doctor, specialist in a brunch of clinical medicine

Some roots may be both initial and final. Final roots have com- mon endings, mostly the ending **-ia**. For example: the initial root **ophthalm-** and the final root **-ophthlmia** have the same meaning “eye”. In these cases, both roots are placed in the same cell of the table.

§ 116. Names of the main branches of clinical medicine

Names of the main branches of clinical medicine are usually formed by means of the final root element **-logia** and the appropriate initial one, which determines the cardinal sense of the term. It should be mentioned that the most numerous names of medico-biological sciences are built according to this rule:

ophthalm- (eye) + logia → ophthalmologia, ae f – ophthalmology, a branch of clinical medicine treating eye diseases;

proct- (rectum) + logia → proctologia, ae f – proctology, a branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases. Compare as well:

immunologia, ae f – immunology, a science about immunity;

pharmacologia, ae f – pharmacology, a science about drugs and their usage;

physiologia, ae f – physiology, a science about normal vital processes in human organism.

Names of some branches of clinical medicine are built by adding the root **-patho-** (disease) and the final root **-logia** to the initial root:

neur- (nerve) + -patho- + logia → neuropathologia, ae f – neuropathology, clinical neurology, a branch of clinical medicine treating nerve diseases;

sex- (sex) + -patho- + logia → sexopathologia, ae f – sexopathology, a branch of medicine dealing with sexual disorders.

Some names of medical branches are formed by means of the final root element **-iatria**, which means some definite branches of clinical medicine:

geriatria, ae f – geriatrics, a particular branch of medicine treating diseases of older age;

paediatrica, ae f – pediatrics, a branch of medicine treating children's diseases;

phoniatria, ae f – phoniatics, a branch of medicine treating disorders of voice production ;

phthisiatria, ae f – phthisiology, a branch of medicine treating tuberculosis;

psychiatria, ae f – psychiatrics (psychiatry), a branch of medicine treating mental diseases.

§ 117. Names of medical specialists

Most names of medical specialists are composed of the final root element **-logus** and the appropriate initial root element which determines the cardinal sense

of the term. In this way the names of most biological and medical specialists are formed:

anthropolōgus, i m – anthropologist, a specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution;

biolōgus, i m – biologist, a specialist studying forms of life and living organisms;

diaetolōgus, i m – dietitian, a specialist in the dietary nutrition;

haematolōgus, i m – hematologist, a specialist in blood diseases.

If the name of a branch of medicine has the ending **-pathologia**, then the name of a specialist has the ending **-patholōgus**:

neuropathologia → **neuropatholōgus, i m** – neuropathologist, a specialist in nerve diseases;

sexopathologia → **sexopatholōgus, i m** – sexopathologist, a specialist treating sexual disorders.

If the name of a branch of medicine has the ending **-iatria**, then the name of a specialist has the ending **-iāter**:

paediatricia → **paediāter, tri m** – pediatrician (= paediatrist), a specialist in children's diseases.

Finally, many Latin names of medical specialists are built by means of the suffix **-ista** and the initial root element:

oculista, ae m – oculist, a specialist treating eye diseases;

therapeutista, ae m – physician, therapist, a specialist treating inner organs.

§ 118. Some notes on the names of medical specialists in Latin and English

Names of medical specialists in Latin don't fully coincide with the English equivalents, as seen above. The difference lies not only on the morphological level (phtisiāter, tri m – phtisiologist), – sometimes the lexical units don't correspond to each other. For example, the name otorhinolaryngologist is not quite common for English or American medical vocabulary; – instead three separate terms are used: otologist, rhinologist and laryngologist. But, the term otolaryngologist is used as well. That is why it is more convenient to use this slightly artificial, but formally correct term otorhinolaryngologist, than to bring three English terms as equivalents. And otherwise, we tend to use the terms presented both in modern English and Latin medical language.

§ 119. Names of medical examinations and methods of treatment

The names of medical examinations are usually formed by means of the final root elements **-graphia**, **-metria**, **-scopia**, **-diagnostīca**:

cystographia, ae f – cystography, X-ray examination of the urinary bladder;

pelvimetria, ae f – pelvimetry, measuring of pelvis size in women;

proctoscopia, ae f – proctoscopy, internal examination of the rectum;

thermodiagnostīca, ae f – thermodiagnosics, a diagnosis via infrared radiation.

Names which signify methods of medical treatment usually contain the final root element **-therapia** and the initial root element indicating a method of treatment:

physiotherapia, ae f – physiatrics, treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors;

phytotherapia, ae f – phytotherapy, treatment by means of medicinal herbs.

Results of X-ray, electric or other methods of medical examination are expressed by the final root **-gramma**:

haemogramma, ātis n – hemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood;

mammogramma, ātis n – mammogram, an X-ray film of breast.

§ 120. Table of initial root elements

Greek initial roots and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
anthrop-	homo, ĩnis m	man	anthrop-
bi-	vita, ae f	life	bi-
cardi-	cor, cordis n	heart	cardi-
ger-, geront-	senex, senis m	old man or old age	ger-, geront-
gynaec-	femĭna, ae f	woman	gynaec-
haem-, haemat-	sanguis, ĩnis m	blood	hem-, hemat-
mast-, mamm-	mamma, ae f	breast	mast-, mamm-
neur-	nervus, i m	nerve	neur-
ophthalm-, -ophthalmia	ocŭlus, i m	eye	ophthalm-, -ophthalmia
ot-	auris, is f	ear	ot-
paed-	infans, ntis m, f	child	ped-
path-	morbus, i m	disease	path-
pharmac-	medicamentum, i n	drug	pharmac-
phthisi-	tuberculōsis, is f	tuberculosis	phthisi-
physi-	natŭra, ae f	nature	physi-
phyt-	planta, ae f	plant, herb	phyt-
proct-	rectum, i n	rectum	proct-
psych-	anĭmus, i m	psyche	psych-
rhin-	nasus, i m	nose	rhin-
somat-	corpus, ōris n	body	somat-

stom-, stomat-	os, oris n	mouth	stom-, stomat-
---------------------------	------------	-------	----------------

§ 121. Table of final root elements

Final root elements	English meaning
-diagnostica	examination of functional state of organs in order to reveal some disorders
-gēnus, a, um	caused by any factor
-graphia	1) X-ray examination 2) examination by means of electricity 3) recording of the result of some examination
-gramma	result of some medical examination seen on a film or presented graphically
-iater	medical specialist treating certain inner diseases
-iatria	any definite branch of clinical medicine
-logia	name of some science or branch of clinical medicine
-lōgus	name of medical or biological specialists
-metria	measurement of physical characteristics of human body
-scopia	visual or instrumental visual examination
-therapia	method of treatment

So, your task is to memorize the word building elements of this and the following lessons and combine these elements in terms. If you are not quite sure of your version of translation, consult the dictionary.

§ 122. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

cardi-, neur-, ot-, paed-, path-, pharmac-, physi-, phyt-, proct-, psych-.

2. Give the Greek morphological elements corresponding to the following Latin nouns:

anīmus, i m; auris, is f; corpus, ōris n; femīna, ae f; homo, īnis m;

medicamentum, i n; morbus, i m; oculus, i m; sanguis, ĩnis m; senex, senis m; tuberculōsis, is f; vita, ae f.

3. *Determine orally the full dictionary form of each term and the meaning of the initial and final roots, write down the full definition:*

anthropologia; anthropogĕnus; biolōgia; cardiolōgus; cardiogĕnus; craniometria; geriāter; gynaecolōgus; haematologia; iatrogĕnus; mastogramma; neuropatholōgus; ophthalmoscopia; otorhinolaryngologia; physiologia; phthisiāter; phytotherapia; proctolōgus; psychiatria; rhinogramma; somatologia; stomatoscopia.

4. *Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:*

branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases; branch of medicine treating diseases of children; diagnosis via examination of iris; medical specialist treating blood diseases; medical specialist treating diseases of inner organs; measurement of pelvis in women; results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood; science studying drugs and their usage; treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors; specialist studying forms of life and living organisms; specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution; treatment by means of medical herbs; the X-ray examination of mamma.

5. *Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition in English of the terms:*

anthropologist; biopharmaceutics; cardiogram; cardiography; gerontology; hematology; hemogram; iatrogenic; iridodiagnostics; mammogram; neurogenic; ophthalmoscopy; otogenic; otolaryngologist; pediatrician; pharmacotherapy; phthisiologist; phytotherapy; proctodiagnostics; proctoscopy; psychiatrist; psychogenic; psychologist; rhinoscopy; somatology; stomatology; therapist; thoracometry.

§ 123. Vocabulary to lesson 19

I. Latin-English vocabulary

anthropologia, ae f	anthropology, science studying the man in the process of his evolution
anthropolōģus, i m	anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution
biologia, ae f	biology, science studying forms of life and vital organisms
cardiolōģus, i m	cardiologist, medical specialist treating heart diseases
cardiogēnus, a, um	cardiogenic, happening because of the heart
craniometria, ae f	craniometry, measurement size of the skull
geriāter, tri m	geriatrician, medical specialist treating diseases of the aged
gynaecolōģus, i m	gynecologist, medical specialist treating genital diseases in women
haematologia, ae f	hematology, branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases
iatrogēnus, a, um	iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks
mastogramma, ātis n	mastogram, result of breast X-ray examination
neuropatholōģus, i m	neuropathologist, specialist treating diseases of the nervous system
ophthalmoscopia, ae f	ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye
otorhinolaryngologia, ae f	otorhinolaryngology, branch of medicine treating diseases of ear, nose and larynx
physiologia, ae f	physiology, science studying normal vital processes in human body
phthisiāter, tri m	phthisiologist, specialist treating tuberculosis
phytotherapia, ae f	phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of

	medicinal herb
proctolōgus, i m	proctologist, specialist treating diseases of rectum
psychiatria, ae f	psychiatry, branch of medicine treating mental diseases
rhinogramma, ātis n	rhinogram, X-ray film of the nose
somatologia, ae f	somatology, branch of anthropology, studying structure of the human body
stomatoscopia, ae f	stomatoscopy, visual examination of the oral cavity

II. English-Latin vocabulary

anthropologist, specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution	anthropolōgus, i m
biopharmaceutics, study of physical and chemical properties of medicinal substances	biopharmaceutīca, ae f
branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases, proctology	proctologia, ae f
branch of medicine treating diseases of children, paediatrics	paediatría, ae f
cardiogram 1) result of X-ray examination of the heart 2) graphical picture of heart action	cardiogramma, ātis n
cardiography 1) X-ray examination of the heart 2) graphical recording of heart action	cardiographia, ae f
diagnosis via examination of iris, iridodiagnostics	iridodiagnostīca, ae f
gerontology, science studying living processes in the aged	gerontologia, ae f
hematology, branch of medicine studying blood and its diseases	haematologia, ae f
hemogram, results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood	haemogramma, ātis n
iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks	iatrogēnus, a, um
iridodiagnostics, diagnosis via examination of iris	iridodiagnostīca, ae f
mammogram, result of breast X-ray examination	nannogramma, ātis n

measurement of pelvis in women, pelvimetry	pelvimetria, ae f
medical specialist treating blood diseases, hematologist	haematolōgus, i m
medical specialist treating diseases of inner organs, therapist	therapeutista, ae m
neurogenic, happening because of the nervous system disorders	neurogēnus, a, um
ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the eye	ophthalmosopia, ae f
otogenic, happening because of the ear	otogēnus, a, um
otolaryngologist, specialist treating ear and larynx diseases	otolaryngolōgus, i m
pediatrician, specialist treating children diseases	paediāter, tri m
pharmacotherapy, science studying drugs and their usage in the treatment of diseases	pharmacotherapia, ae f
phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medical herbs	phytotherapia, ae f
proctodiagnostics, examination of the functional state of the rectum	proctodiagnostics, ae f
proctoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the rectum	proctosopia, ae f
psychiatrist, specialist treating mental diseases	psychiāter, tri m
psychogenic, developing or originating of mental causes	psychogēnus, a, um
psychologist, specialist studying mental activities of a human personality	psycholōgus, i m
phthisiologist, specialist treating tuberculosis results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood, hemogram	phthisiāter, tri m haemogramma, ātis n
rhinoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the nose	rhinosopia, ae f

science studying drugs and their usage, pharmacology	pharmacologia, ae f
somatology, branch of anthropology, studying structure of human body	somatologia, ae f
specialist studying forms of life and living organisms, biologist	biolōgus, i m
specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution, anthropologist	anthropolōgus, i m
specialist treating diseases of inner organs, therapeutist (therapist)	therapeutista, ae m
stomatology, branch of clinical medicine treating diseases of the oral cavity	stomatologia, ae f
therapeutist, medical specialist treating diseases of inner organs	therapeutista, ae m
thoracometry, measurement of the size of the thorax	thoracometria, ae f
treatment by means of natural or artificial physical factors, physiotherapy	physiotherapia, ae f
the X-ray examination of mamma, mammography	mammographia, ae f

Lesson 20

ONE-WORD NAMES OF FUNCTION DISORDERS, PATHOLOGICAL PROCESSES AND ABNORMAL CONDITIONS

§ 124. One-word names of functional disorders

Usually, one-word names of functional disorders are composed of Greek prefixes and roots. There are the following prefixes:

1. The prefix **a-** (before a consonant) or **an-** (before a vowel). This prefix signifies cessation or loss of a function as well as lack of property:

adentia, ae f – lack of teeth, adentia;

anuria, ae f – complete cessation of the secretion and excretion of urine, anuria;

aphagia, ae f – a condition in which the ability of swallowing is lacking, aphagia;

In the same way the Latin prefix **in-** (**im-** before consonants **b** or **m**) combined with Latin roots is used both in nouns and adjectives:

incontinentia, ae f – lack of voluntary control over the discharge of faeces or urine, incontinence;

insufficiētia, ae f – state of being inadequate to perform normal functions, insufficiency;

immobilitas, ātis f – lack of mobility, immobility;

insensibilis, e – lack of sensibility or intelligence, insensible.

2. The prefix **dys-** signifies functional disorders:

dysgeusia, ae f – impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia;

dysthyreōsis, is f – imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreōsis;

dysuria, ae f – condition in which the passage of urine is difficult, dysuria.

3. The prefix **en-** (**em-** before consonants **b, m, p**) indicates the inner location of any morbid condition:

empyēma, ātis n – accumulation of pus in a cavity;

enophthalmus, i m – recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit

As prefixed elements some Greek adjectives, pronouns and numerals are **used**:

Prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English translation
auto-	self-, resulting of one's own action	autopepsia, ae f (autolýsis, is f)	the process of spontaneous disintegration of cells and tissues resulting from the action of intracellular enzymes, autopepsia (autolysis)
mono-	one (part)	monoplegia, ae f	a pathological condition in which only

			one muscle, one group of muscles or one part of the body is affected, monoplegia
di-	two (parts)	diplegia, ae f	paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia
hemi-	half	hemialgia, ae f	neuralgic pain affecting the right or the left side of the body or the right or the left side of any part of the body, hemialgia

§ 125. One-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions

The majority of one-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions are composed of Greek roots, suffixes and endings which are adapted to Latin grammar system. One group of terms consists of a root, a suffix and an ending. Two suffixes of this group compose a morphological unity with their endings:

Latin suffix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent	Full English explanation
-ismus (suffix -ism- + -us , ending of the 2 nd declension)	abnormality or pathological process, the meaning of which is determined by the root element	botulismus, i m	botulism	a form of food poisoning due to the botulinum toxin
-ōsis (suffix -os- + -is , ending of the 3 rd)	pathological condition or process	dermatōsis, is f	dermatōsis	any skin disease

Latin suffix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent	Full English explanation
declension)				

Attention! The final suffix *-ōsis* may be used as the morphological part of a noun term not denoting a disease:

diagnōsis, is f – diagnosis, the scientific recognition of the disease from which a person suffers;

symbiōsis, is f – symbiosis, the intimate association of two organisms.

The next two suffixes are considered as final suffixed elements of the nouns of the 3rd declension:

Latin suffix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent	Full English explanation
-ēma	different pathological conditions	<i>enanthēma</i> , <i>ātis</i> n	<i>enanthema</i>	the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue
-iāsīs	different pathological conditions	<i>psoriāsīs</i> , <i>is</i> f	<i>psoriasis</i>	a chronic disease of the skin characterized by the appearance of laminated scales

But the majority of terms composed of morphological elements present with initial and final roots. First of all, the root **path-** combined with the ending **-ia** is used:

arthropathia, ae f – any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy;

nephropathia, ae f – a disease of the kidney, nephropathy;

rhinopathia, ae f – any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy.

Other roots are also used as final elements which define more precisely the character of pathological condition, e. g.:

angiorrhagia, ae f – a hemorrhage from a vessel, angiorrhagia;

arthralgia, ae f – any kind of pain affecting a joint, arthralgia;

cancerophobia, ae f – unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma, cancerophobia (= carcinomatophobia).

Nevertheless, about 20 % of one-word terms signifying pathological processes and abnormal conditions are nouns comprised of one root:

coma, ātis n – the state of complete loss of consciousness with a disorder of vitally important functions, coma;

infarctus, us m – an area of dead tissue produced by the obstruction of an end artery, infarction;

insultus, us m – cerebral thrombosis, stroke;

sepsis, is f – infection with pyogenic microorganisms, sepsis

§ 126. Initial Greek roots and their Latin equivalents

Initial Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
angi-	vas, vasis n	vessel	angi-
arthr-	articulatio, ōnis f	joint	arthr-
brady-	lentus, a, um	slow	brady-
cephal-	caput, ĩtis n	head	cephal-
chondr-	cartilāgo, ĩnis f	cartilage	chondr-
dactyl-, -dactylia	digĭtus, i m	finger or toe	dactyl-
derm-, dermat-, -dermia	cutis, is f	skin	derm-, dermat-, -dermia
encephal-	cerēbrum, i n	brain	encephal-
my-	muscŭlus, i m	muscle	my-
nephr-	ren, renis m	kidney	nephr-
oste-	os, ossis n	bone	oste-
phon-, -phonia	vox, vocis f	voice	phon-, -phonia

Initial Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building equivalents
phot-	lux, lucis f	light	phot-
phleb-	vena, ae f	vein	phleb-
pseud-	falsus, a, um	false	pseud-
spasm-, -spasmus	spasmus, i m	spasm	spasm-, -spasm
tox-, toxic-	venēnum, i n	poison	tox-, toxic-
tachy-	celer, ěris, ěre	fast, quick	tachy-
trich-, -trichia	capillus, i m; pilus, i m	hair	trich-
xer-	siccus, a, um	dry	xer-

§ 127. Table of final root elements

Final root elements	English meaning
-algia	pain in any part of the body
-geusia	different pathological conditions of taste
-kinesia	different pathological conditions of voluntary motion
-malacia	pathological softening of an organ or tissue
-mania	any form of mental disorder accompanied by some degree of excitation
-mycōsis	a morbid condition caused by a pathogenic fungus
-opia, -opsia	any condition of vision
-pathia	a general name of a disease of any organ due to various causes
-pepsia	any condition of digestion
-phagia	any pathological condition in the act of swallowing
-philia	predisposition to any morbid condition
-phobia	a pathological fear
-plegia	paralysis (palsy) of the muscles of any organ
-pnoë	a pathological condition of breathing
-trophia	nutrition

§ 128. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

angi-, arthr-, chondr-, nephr-, phon-, phot-, phleb-, pseud-, tachy-, trich-

2. Give the Greek roots corresponding to the following Latin nouns or adjectives:

caput, ĩtis n; cutis, is f; digĭtus, i m; lentus, a, um; os, ossis n; siccus, a, um; vena, ae f; venĕnum, i n.

3. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each noun. Determine the meaning of each initial and final morphological element; write down the full definition of each term and its English equivalent:

angiopathia; arthromalacia; autohaemotherapia; autopepsia; bradyphagia; bradypnoĕ; chondropathia; dactylospasmus; dermatōsis; dermatomycōsis; dysgeusia; encephalogramma; gastrospasmus; hemicrania; hemianopsia; hemiplegia; monodactylismus; myoplegia; osteomalacia; osteopathia; phlebocarcinōma; photophobia; pseudoarthrōsis; spasmophilia; stomatomycōsis; tachycardia; toxicomania; xerophthalmia.

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

abnormal quickness in eating; a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales; a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking; any disease affecting a joint; any disease of the skin; any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair; any morbid condition of the nose; a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscles or one part of the body is affected; impairment of any voice; any kind of pain affecting a joint; paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body; the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue;

the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart; unfounded or unreasonable fear that there is a predisposition to carcinoma.

5. Give the full definition in English and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:

angiology; apnoea; arthralgia; atrichia; atrophy; autolaryngoscopy; autopsy; biopsy; bradycardia; cephalalgia; didactylism; dystrophy; encephalomalacia; enophthalmus; hemiatrophy; hemophilia; mastopathy; monopathophobia, myopia, nephrogenic, nephropathy, ophthalmoplegia, osteochondrosis; osteodystrophy; pharmacophobia; phoniatics; phlebography; phonocardiogram; photophobia; proctospasm; rhinopathy; tachyphagia; toxicosis; xerostomia.

§ 129. Vocabulary to lesson 20

I. Latin – English vocabulary

angiopathia, ae f	any disease of blood vessels, angiopathy
arthromalacia, ae f	softening of joints, arthromalacia
autohaemotherapy, ae f	a method of treatment in which the patient's own blood is administered to him, autohaemotherapy
autopepsia, ae f	the process of a spontaneous disintegration of cells and tissues resulting from the action of intracellular enzymes, autopepsia
bradyphagia, ae f	slowing of swallowing, bradyphagia
bradypnoë, es f	an abnormally slow rate of breathing, bradypnoea
chondropathia, ae f	any disease affecting a cartilage, chondropathy
dactylospasmus, i m	spasmodic contraction of a finger or toe, dactylospasm
dermatōsis, ae f	any disease of the skin, dermatosis
dermatomycōsis, ae f	a generic term for all cutaneous infections due to fungi
dysgeusia, ae f	impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia
encephalogramma, ātis n	any X-ray film obtained in the radiological examination of the ventricles and subarachnoid space of the brain, encephalogram

gastrospasmus, i m	an involuntary contraction of the stomach muscle, gastrospasm
hemicrania, ae f	a periodic morbid condition with localized headaches, hemicrania
hemianopsia, ae f (=hemianopia, ae f)	loss of half the vision in each eye, hemianopsia (hemianopia)
hemiplegia, ae f	paralysis of one side of the body, hemiplegia
monodactylismus, i m	a congenital condition in which only one finger or toe is present on the hand or the foot, monodactylism
myoplegia, ae f	paralysis of muscle or a condition in which muscular force is decreased, myoplegia
osteomalacia, ae f	softening of bones, osteomalacia
osteopathia, ae f	disease of bones, osteopathia
phlebocarcinōma, ātis n	a malignant epithelial tumour affecting a vein, phlebocarcinoma
photophobia, ae f	abnormal intolerance to light, photophobia
pseudoarthrōsis, is f	a false joint formed between the fragments of a fractured bone which have failed to unite, pseudoarthrosis
spasmophilia, ae f	a morbid state in which there is a tendency to convulsions and a spasm, spasmophilia
stomatomycōsis, is f	any morbid condition caused by a microscopical fungus, stomatomycosis
tachycardia, ae f	a rapid action of the heart, tachycardia
toxicomania, ae f	an insane desire for poison, toxicomania
xerophthalmia, ae f	a morbid condition of eyes, characterized by a shrunken appearance of the conjunctiva, xerophthalmia (= xeroma)

II. English – Latin vocabulary

abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia	tachyphagia, ae f
---	-------------------

angiology, the science of blood vessels	angiologia, ae f
apnea, the cessation of breathing	apnoë, ës f
arthralgia, any kind of pain affecting a joint	arthralgia, ae f
atrachia, not having hair	atrachia, ae f
atrophy, a condition of general malnutrition from whatever cause	atrophia, ae f
autolaryngoscopy, the examination of one's own larynx with a laryngoscope	autolaryngoscopia, ae f
autopsy, post-mortem examination of a body in order to establish the cause of death	autopsia, ae f
biopsy, examination for purposes of diagnosis of issue cut from the living body	biopsia, ae f
bradycardia, slowing of the heart rate	bradycardia, ae f
cephalalgia, pain in the head	cephalalgia,ae f
a chronic disease of the skin, characterized by the appearance of laminated scales, psoriasis	psoriäsis, is f
a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking, aphagia	aphagia, ae f
didactylism, the congenital condition of having only two fingers on a hand or two toes on a foot	didactylismus, i m
any disease affecting a joint, arthropathy	arthropathia, ae f
any disease of the skin, dermatosis	dermatōsis,is f
dystrophy, a disorder of the structure and functions of an organ or tissue due to perverted nutrition	dystrophia, ae f
encephalomalacia, softening of the brain	encephalomalacia, ae f
enophthalmus, recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit	enophthalmus, i m
hemiatrophy, atrophy affecting only one side of the body, or one half of an organ	hemiatrophia, ae f
hemophilia, a severe hereditary bleeding disease	haemophilia, ae f

affecting males and transmitted by females	
impairment of the voice, dysphosnia	dysphonia, ae f
any kind of pain affecting a joint, the flag	arthralgia, ae f
mastopathy, any diseased condition of the mammary gland	mastopathia, ae f
any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy	rhinopathia, ae f
any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair, trichopathy	trichopathia, ae f
myopia, short sight	myopia, ae f
nephrogenic, produced by or originating in the kidney	nephrogēnus, a um
nephropathy, a disease of the kidney	nephropathia, ae f
ophthalmoplegia, palsy (paralysis) of ocular muscles	ophthalmoplegia, ae f
osteochondrosis, a degenerative change in bony and cartilage tissues	osteochondrosis, is f
osteodystrophy, a disorder of bone nutrition	osteodystrophia, ae f
paralysis of similar parts on both sides of the body, diplegia	diplegia, ae f
pharmacophobia, a morbid fear of taking drugs or medicines	pharmacophobia, ae f
phoniatics (= phoniatriy), the treatment of disorders of speech	phoniatria, ae f
a pathological condition in which only one muscle, one group of muscles or one part of the body is affected, monoplegia	monoplegia, ae f
phlebography 1) a radiographic visualization of veins 2) the tracing of the venous pulse by means of a phlebograph	phlebographia, ae f
phonocardiogram, the record produced by an instrument for recording heart sounds	phonocardiogramma, ātis n
photophobia, abnormal intolerance to light	photophobia, ae f

phthisiologist, a specialist treating tuberculosis	phthisiāter, tri m
phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medical herbs	phytotherapia, ae f
proctospasm, a spasmodic contraction of the rectum	proctospasmus, i m
the rash or eruption on the mucous tissue, enantherma	enanthēma, ātis n
rhinopathy, any morbid condition of the nose	rhinopathia, ae f
tachyphagia, abnormal quickness in eating	tachyphagia, ae f
toxicosis, a pathological condition caused by the absorption of poisons	toxicōsis, is f
unfounded or unreasonable fear of a predisposition to carcinoma	cancerophobia, ae f
xerostomia, dryness of the mouth due to failure of the salivary gland	xerostomia, ae f
the X-ray examination of the great vessels and the chambers of the heart, angiocardigraphy	angiocardigraphia, ae f

Lesson 21

NAMES OF QUALITATIVE AND QUANTITATIVE ABNORMALITIES IN MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURES AND PHYSIOLOGICAL PROCESSES

§ 130. Increase and decrease in different quantitative conditions

Increase and decrease of different quantitative conditions may, as a rule, be expressed by means of the prefixes **hyper-** and **hypo-** which are joined by final root elements:

hyperaesthesia, ae f – excessive sensitiveness of the skin, hyperaesthesia;

hyperkinesia, ae f – a condition in which there is abnormally great strength of movement, hyperkinesias;

hyperplasia, ae f – any condition in which there is an increase in the number of cells in any body's part, hyperplasia;

hypodynamia, ae f – diminished muscular or nervous energy, hypodynamia;

hypogalactia, ae f – the secretion of a too small quantity of milk, hypogalactia;

hypopepsia, ae f – abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia.

Increase and decrease in the functional activity is sometimes expressed by means of the initial roots **tachy-** and **brady-**:

tachypnoë, ës f – abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnoea

bradykinesia, ae f – abnormal sluggishness of physical movements, bradykinesia

§ 131. Increase or decrease in dimension of anatomical and histological structures

Increase in size of anatomical or histological structures is expressed by means of the following initial and final roots: **dolich-**, **macr-**, **mega-**, **megal-**, **-megalia**:

dolichocōlon, i n – an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon

macrocytus, i m – a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte

megaduodēnum, i n – duodenum of abnormally large size, megadoduenum

megalosplenia, ae f – enlargement of the spleen, megalosplenia

hepatomegalia, ae f – a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia.

Decrease in size of anatomical and histological structures is expressed by means of the initial roots **brachy-** and **micr-**:

Brachydactylia, ae f – a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia

microcephālus, i m – a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus.

Dilatation or narrowing in volume of a hollow organ, cavity or tube is expressed by means of the following roots: **-ectasia, -ectāsis, -dilatatio, sten-,**

-stenōsis:

bronchiectāsis, is f – a condition of dilatation of a bronchus or bronchi, bronchiectasis

gastrectasia, ae f – dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia

vasodilatatio, ōnis f – dilatation of a blood vessel, vasodilatation

stenostomia, ae f – abnormal narrowness of the mouth, stenostomy

oesophagostenōsis, is f – narrowing of the oesophagus, oesophagostenosis.

§ 132. Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures

Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures is expressed by means of the roots **olig-, poly-, -penia:**

oligodontia (= oligodentia), ae f – a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodontia

polyarthropathia, ae f – a pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthropathy

erythropenia, ae f – a state in which there are too few erythrocytes in the blood, erythropenia

Increase in the quantity of any anatomical or histological structure may also be expressed by the final prefix **-ōsis:**

leucocytōsis, is f – an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood, leucocytosis

papillomatōsis, is f – the condition of diffuse formation of papillomata, papillomatosis

§ 133. Table of initial root elements

Greek root and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word - building equivalents
aesthes-, -aesthesia	sensus, us m	sensibility, sensitiveness	aesthes-, -aesthesia
brachy-	brevis, e	short	brachy-
cheil-, -cheilia	labium, i n	lip	cheil-, -cheilia
cyt-, -cȳtus	cellūla, ae f	cell	cyt-, -cyte
dolich-	longus, a, um	long	dolich-
erythr-	ruber, bra, brum	red	erythr-
gloss-, -glossia	lingua, ae f	tongue	gloss-, -glossia
glyc-	dulcis, e	sugar	glyc-
gnath-, -gnathia	maxilla, ae f	maxilla, upper jaw	gnath-, -gnathia
leuc-	albus, a, um	white	leuc-
macr-, mega-, megal-, -megalia	magnus, a, um	large	macr-, mega-, megal-, -megalia
melan-	niger, gram, grum	black	melan-
micr-	parvus, a, um	small	micr-
myel, -myelia	1) medulla ossium 2) medulla spinālis	1) bone marrow 2) spinal cord	myel, -myelia
odont-, -odonia, -dentia	dens, dentis, m	tooth	odont-, -odonia -dentia
olig-	parvus, a, um	few	olig-
pod-, -podia	pes, pedis m	foot	pod-, -podia
poly-	multus, a, um	many	poly-
splen-, -splenia	lien, ēnis m	spleen	splen-, -splenia
sphygm-	pulsus, us m	pulse	sphygm-,

Greek root and its variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word - building equivalents
-sphygmia			-sphygmia
therm-, -thermia	1) calor, ōris m 2) temperaturā, ae f	1) heat 2) temperature	therm-, -thermia
thyre-	glandūla thyr(e)oidea	thyroid (gland)	thyro-

Attention! 1. The initial roots **macr-** and **megal-** may be used in many (but not in all!) cases as synonyms: macrocephalia = megalcephalia, macropodia = megalopodia. When choosing the necessary variant of the initial root one should consult the dictionary.

2. The root **-cyt-** can be omitted if the term begins with **erythrocyt-** or **leucocyt-** and ends with **-penia**:

erythrocytopenia = erythropenia; leucocytopenia = leucopenia, but: monocytopenia, thrombocytopenia – the only variants.

§ 134. Table of final roots

Final root elements	English meaning
-aemia	any condition of the blood
-genēsis	the origin and (formative) development
-genia	any condition of mandible
-mnesia	any condition of the memory
-penia	a diminution in the number of any kind of cells present in the blood
-phrenia	a condition associated with a serious mental disorder
-plasia	the development of tissues
-poēsis	the formation 1) of cells present in the blood 2) of lymph 3) of urine
-sthenia	any condition of strength, vigour or forcefulness
-tensio	a condition of arterial blood pressure
-tonia	a condition of muscular tension in the walls of vessels and bowels

§ 135. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

brachy-, dolich-, erythr-, glycy-, leuc-, melan-, micr-, olig-, poly-, thyre-.

2. Write the dictionary form of the Latin equivalents and then give: 1) Greek equivalents corresponding to every Latin equivalent 2) English meaning of every pair of equivalents:

calor; cellŭla; dens; labium; lingua; lien; magnus; maxilla; medulla ossium; pes; pulsus; sensus.

3. Complete (orally) the dictionary form of each noun. Determine the meaning of each initial and final morphological element; write down the full definition of each term as well as its English equivalent:

amnesia; anaesthesiolōgus; apodia; asthenia; brachycephālus; brachydactylia; dolichocephalia; dysthyreōsis; erythropenia; glossoplegia; glycaemia; hyperaemia; hyperthermia; hypotonia; leucocytōsis; melanoderma; microgenia; micromyelia; odontogenēsis; oligocytaemia; oligophrenia; polymastia; prognathia; sphygmogramma; splenomegalia; thermotherapia; thrombocytopoēsis; thyreotoxicōsis.

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

abnormal narrowness of the mouth; abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion; abnormal sluggishness of physical movements; a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes; a condition of enlargement of the liver; an abnormally long colon of normal diameter; an increase in the total number of leucocytes; a pathological condition involving many joints; a person with an

unusually small size of head; a red blood cell that is larger than normal; a state in which most of the teeth are lacking; a state in which there are too few erythrocytes; dilatation of the stomach; excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body; the origin and development of bone marrow; the origin and development of morbid condition; extremely rapid breathing.

5. Give the full definition and the Latin dictionary form of the terms:

aglossia; anaemia; brachyoesophagus; cytology; dolichocolon; dystonia; erythema; gnathalgia; haematomyelia; hepatomegalia; hyperaesthesia; hyperglycaemia; hypertension; hypomnesia; hypophrenia; hypoplasia; hypothermia; macrocyte; megaloduodenum; megalomania; melanocarcinoma; micromastia; microsphygmy; monocytopenia; myelocytoma; oligodactylia; podagra; podalgia; polyavitaminosis; splenohepatomegaly.

§ 136. Vocabulary to lesson 21

I. Latin – English vocabulary

amnesia, ae f	loss of memory of varying degree, amnesia
anaesthesiolōgus, i m	a specialist in the administration of anaesthetics, anaesthesiologist
apodia, ae f	congenital absence of feet, apodia
asthenia, ae f	loss of vital forces, asthenia
brachycephālus, i m	an individual with disproportionately short head, brachycephalic
brachydactylia, ae f	a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia
dolichocephalia, ae f	the state of having a relatively long skull, dolichocephalia
dysthyreōsis, ae f	imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreosis
erythropenia, ae f	a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia

glossoplegia, ae f	paralysis of the tongue, glossoplegia
glycaemia, ae f	a condition in which the circulating blood contains a quantity of sugar above normal amounts, glycaemia
hyperaemia, ae f	an excess of blood in any part of the body, hyperaemia
hyperthermia, ae f	very high body temperature, hyperthermia
hypotonia, ae f	lessened tension in any body structure, hypotonia
leucocytōsis, is f	an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood, leucocytosis
melanoderma, ātis n	a condition in which there is an unusually large accumulation of melanin in the skin, melanoderma
microgenia, ae f	a condition in which the chin is of unusually small size, microgenia
micromyelia, ae f	general reduction in size of the spinal cord, micromyelia
odontogenēsis, is f	the origin and formative development of teeth, odontogenesis
oligocytaemia, ae f	a condition in the blood in which there is cell deficiency, oligocytaemia
oligophrenia, ae f	congenital lack of the mentality, oligophrenia
polymastia, ae f	a state in which in human beings there are more than two distinct mammary glands, polymastia
prognathia, ae f	a condition in which there is abnormal projection of one or both jaws, prognathism
sphygmogramma, ātis n	a record of the arterial pulse waves, sphygmogram
splenomegalia, ae f	enlargement of the spleen, splenomegalia
thermotherapia, ae f	the use of heat in the treatment of disease, thermotherapy
thrombocytopoēsis, is f	the formation of blood platelets, thrombocytopoiesis
thyreotoxicōsis, is f	any toxic condition attributable to hyperactivity of the thyroid gland, thyrotoxicosis

II. English – Latin vocabulary

an abnormally long colon of normal diameter, dolichocolon	dolichocolon, i n
--	-------------------

abnormally rapid breathing, tachypnea	tachypnoë,es f
abnormal slowness and weakness of the process of digestion, hypopepsia	hypopepsia, ae f
abnormal sluggishness of physical movements, bradykinesia	bradykinesia, ae f
aglossia, a congenital condition of being devoid of a tongue	aglossia, ae f
anaemia, a condition of the blood in which there are quantitative and qualitative changes in the red cells resulting in a reduction in the total amount of blood	anaemia, ae f
brachyoesophagus, a congenitally short oesophagus	brachyoesophăgus, i m
a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia	hepatomegalia, ae f
a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia	brachydactylia, ae f
cytology, the science of the form and functions of cells	cytologia, ae f
dilatation of the stomach, gastrectasia	gastrectasia, ae f
dolichocolon, an abnormally long colon of normal diameter	dolichocōlon, i n
dystonia, a state of disordered tonicity	dystonia, ae f
erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia	erythēma, ātis n
excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body, hyperaesthesia	hyperaesthesia, ae f
extremely rapid breathing, tachypnea	tachypnoë, ës f
gnathalgia, pain in one or both jaws	gnathalgia, ae f
haematomyelia, bleeding within the substance of the spinal cord	haematomyelia, ae f
hepatomegalia, a condition of enlargement of	hepatomegalia, ae f

the liver	
hyperaesthesia, excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body	hyperaesthesia, ae f
hyperglycaemia, an excessive amount of sugar in the blood	hyperglycaemia, ae f
hypertension, high arterial blood pressure	hypertensio, ōnis f
hypomnesia, a weak or defective state of the memory	hypomnesia, ae f
hypophrenia, feebleness of mind	hypophrenia, ae f
hypoplasia, underdevelopment of a tissue or part	hypoplasia, ae f
hypothermia, deficiency of body heat	hypothermia, ae f
an increase in the total number of leucocytes, leucocytosis	leucocytōsis, is f
macrocyte, a red blood cell that is larger than normal	macrocytus, i m
megaloduodenum, duodenum of abnormally large size	megaloduodēnum, i n
megalomania, a mental condition in which a person has grandiose delusions about himself and his own intellect, power, importance and so on	megalomania, ae f
melanocarcinoma, a darkly pigmented malignant epithelial tumor	melanocarcinōma, ātis n
micromastia, abnormal smallness of the mammary glands	micromastia, ae f
microsphygmy, diminished strength of pulse	microsphygmia, ae f
monocytopenia, the production of monocytes in the bone marrow	monocytopenia, is f
myelocytæmia, the presence of myelocytes in the blood	myelocytæmia, ae f

oligodactylia, a congenital deficiency of fingers or toes	oligodactylia, ae f
the origin and development of a morbid condition, pathogenesis	pathogenēsis, is f
the origin and development of the bone marrow, myelogenesis	myelogenēsis, is f
a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus	microcephālus, i m
podalgia, sensation of pain in the foot	podalgia, ae f
polyavitaminosis, a morbid condition caused by deficiency of several vitamins	polyavitaminōsis, is f
a state in which most of the teeth are lacking, oligodentia	oligodentia, ae f
a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia	erythropenia, ae f
splenohepatomegaly, enlargement of the spleen	splenohepatomegalia ae f

Lesson 22

NAMES OF INFLAMMATORY PROCESSES WHICH OCCUR IN ORGANS AND TISSUES. NAMES OF ABNORMALITIES IN THE STATES OF PHYSIOLOGICAL FLUIDS

§ 137. Names of inflammatory conditions

The state of inflammation in any organ or tissue, as a rule, is usually expressed by means of the final suffixed element **-ītis** which is transformed into – **itīdis** in the Genitive form. The suffix **-ītis** is added to the initial root of the noun which defines the place of a morbid state. All the terms with the suffix **-ītis** are nouns of the 3rd declension:

arthr- (joint) + ĩtis → **arthrĳtis, itĳdis f** – inflammation of a joint, arthritis

hepat- (liver) + ĩtis → **hepatĳtis, itĳdis f** – inflammation of the liver, hepatitis

The suffix -ĳtis may be added both to the Greek and Latin roots:

nephr- (Greek nephros *kidney*) + ĩtis → **nephrĳtis, itĳdis f** – an inflammatory disease of the kidneys, nephritis

tonsill- (Latin tonsilla, ae f *tonsil*) + ĩtis → **tonsillĳtis, itĳdis f** – an inflammation of the tonsil, tonsillitis

The site of the inflammatory process can be defined more precisely by means of the following prefixes of the Greek origin:

1) **endo-** (inner, mostly a mucous part of an organ):

endo + metr- (utĳrus, i m) + ĩtis → **endometrĳtis, itĳdis f** – an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis

2) **para-** (cellular, connective and other tissues near an organ):

para- + cyst (urinary bladder) + ĩtis → **paracystĳtis, itĳdis f** – a condition of inflammation affecting the connective and other tissues lying close to the bladder, paracystitis

3) **peri-** (tissues enclosing an organ):

peri- + card- (heart) + ĩtis → **pericardĳtis, itĳdis f** – an inflammation of the membrane enveloping the heart, pericarditis.

Names of some inflammatory morbid conditions are formed without suffix -ĳtis, e. g.:

panarĳtium, i n – an inflammation in the nail fold, panaris (= panarĳtium);

pneumonia, ae f – an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung, pneumonia

§ 138. Names of morbid conditions of physiological fluids

Due to inflammatory processes some specific fluids may accumulate or be produced in cavities and tissues:

exsudātum, i n – a fluid extravasated into a cavity, exudate;

transsudātum, i n – any fluid that has passed through a membrane or the skin, transudate.

The abnormal accumulation of fluid in a tissue or cavity space is generally called **hydrops, ōpis m** – hydrops, dropsy. This noun is used with adjectives and any other noun:

hydrops vesicae felleae – fluid swelling in the gall bladder.

The presence of excessive fluid in the cavity of a definite part of the body is expressed by the prefix **hydro-** and a final root with the ending of the 1st, 2nd or 3rd declension:

hydrometra, ae f – an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus, hydrometra;

hydropericardium, i n – excessive accumulation of serous fluid in the pericardium, hydropericardium;

hydrarthrōsis, is f – a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint, hydrarthrosis.

Pus also refers to the fluids accumulated due to the inflammatory processes. The presence of pus is expressed in one-word terms by the initial root **py-** (Greek pus) and the final roots together with the grammar ending:

pyopericardium, i n – an accumulation of pus in the pericardium, pyopericardium;

pyuria, ae f – a condition in which pus is present in the urine.

The meaning “lymph” is denoted by the initial roots **chyl-** and **lymph-**.

The root **chyl-** is used if lymph is present in a cavity, in the blood or urine:

chylothōrax, ācis m – a condition in which there is an effusion of lymph into the thoracic cavity, chylothorax;

chyluria, ae f – a condition in which the urine contains lymph, chyluria.

The root **lymph-** is used if lymph is considered as a part of lymphatic cells, glands and vessels:

lymphocytōsis, is f – an increase in the number of lymphocytes present in the blood, lymphocytosis;

lymphadenopahia, ae f – any morbid condition of the lymph gland, lymphadenopathy;

lymphangiūtis, itīdis f – an inflammation of lymphatic vessels, lymphangiitis.

Abnormal presence of blood in a cavity is expressed by the initial root **haem-** or **haemat-** which is added to a root and the final suffix **-ōsis** as well as any grammar ending of the 1st, 2nd or 3rd declension:

haemarthrōsis, is f – an extravasation of blood into a joint, haemarthrosis;

haematomētra, ae f – an accumulation of blood or menstrual fluid in the cavity of uterus, haematometra;

haemotympānum, i n – the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity, haemotympanum.

An abnormal state of blood circulation is mostly caused by embolaemia – a condition in which emboli are present in the blood. As a result, there occurs a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli – fragments of a blood clot, clumps of bacteria or other foreign bodies introduced into the circulation. Such a condition is named thromboembolism (thromboembolismus, i m or thromboembolia, ae f).

An abnormal cessation of the flow of blood, lymph or other physiological fluid is marked by the final root **-stāsis**:

galactostāsis, is f – an arrest or stagnation in the secretion of milk, galactostasis;

lymphostāsis, is f – cessation of the flow of lymph, lymphostasis.

§ 139. Table of initial roots

Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
aden-	1) glandŭla, ae f 2) adenoīdes, um f 3) nodus lymphaticus	1) gland 2) adenoids 3) lymphatic node	aden-
aēr-, pneum-, pneumat-	aēr, is m	air or a gas	aēr-, pneum-, pneumat-
chole-	bilis, is f; fel, fellis n	bile	chole-
cholecyst-	vesīca biliāris (fellea)	gall bladder	cholecyst-
1) chyl-, 2) lymph-	lymphā, ae f	chyle or lymph	chyl-, lymph-
col-, -colon	1) intestīnum crassum 2) colon	1) large intestine 2) colon	col-, -colon col-, -colon
cyst-	1) saccus, i m 2) vesīca, ae f 3) vesīca urinaria	1) sac 2) bladder 3) urinary bladder	cyst-
dacry-	lacrīma, ae f	tear	dacry-
dacryocyst-	saccus lacrimālis	lacrimal sac	dacryocyst-
enter-	1) intestīnum tenue 2) intestīnum	1) small intestine 2) intestine	enter-
galact-, -galactia	lac, lactis n	milk	galact-, -galactia
hidr- hydr-	sudor, ōris m 1) aqua, ae f 2) liquor cerebrospinalis 3) exsudātum, i n	sweat 1) water 2) cerebrospinal fluid 3) exudate	hidr- hydr-

Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
	4) transsudātum, i n	4) transudate	
lip-, seb-	1) adeps, ĩpis m 2) sebum, i n	1) fatty tissue of the body 2) the fatty secretion of the sebaceous glands	lip-, seb-
men-	mensis, is m	menses, the monthly discharge of blood from the uterus	men-
pan-, pant-	omnis, e	all	pan-, pant-
poli-	griseus, a, um	grey	poli-
py-	pus, puris n	pus	py-
sial-, -sialia	1) salīva, ae f 2) ductus salivarii	1) saliva 2) salivary ducts	sial-, -sialia
ur-, -uria	1) urea, ae f 2) urīna, ae f	1) urea, the chief nitrogenous constituent of urine 2) urine	ur-, -uria
xanth-	flavus, a, um	yellow	xanth-

§ 140. Table of final roots

Final root elements	English meaning
-chlorhydria	any state of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice
-chylia	secretion of the gastric juice
-menorrhoea	any condition of menses
-metra	any condition of the uterus
-rrhagia	hemorrhage (bleeding) in any part of the body
-rrhoea	profuse discharge of mucus or other fluid substance
-salivatio	secretion of saliva
-salpinx	any condition of the uterine tube

-stāsis	cessation of the flow of any physiological fluid
-thōrax	any condition of the thorax
-uria	any condition of the urine

§ 141. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

aden-, chole-, col-, cyst-, dacry-, enter-, hidr-, lip-, men-, poli-, py-, xanth-.

2. Give the dictionary form of Latin words and Greek equivalents to the Latin ones:

adeps, aër, aqua, flavus, griseus, lac, lacrima, liquor cerebrospinalis, saliva, sudor, vesica urinaria.

3. Complete orally the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English a full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:

achlorhydria; adenalgia; adenasthenia; aërobion; amenorrhoea; anaërobion; chylothōrax; cholecystitis; cystorrhagia; dacryostenosis; empyēma; enterocolitis; galactorrhoea; haemarthrosis; hidradenitis; hydromētra; hypochylia; hyposalivatio; lipuria; lymphostāsis; menalgia; megacōlon; pantalgia; poliomyelitis; pyogēnus; pyopneumothōrax; pyosalpinx; uraemia; xanthopsia; xanthōsis.

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened; acute inflammation of the gray matter of the brain; an accumulation of pus in the pericardium; a discharge of pus; a disturbance of color vision when everything appears yellow; an excessive flow of milk; any fluid that has passed through the membrane of the skin; a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint; inflammation in

the nail fold; inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus; inflammation of the liver; narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland; profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose; the presence of air or gas within a thorax; the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity; a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli; the presence of blood in the urine.

5. Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition of each term in English:

achylia; aerobic; anaerobic; chyluria; colonorrhagia; cystitis; dacryorrhoea; dysmenorrhoea; dropsy; embolaemia; endometritis; enteromegalia; enterogastritis; galactostasis; haematosalpinx; hydrarthrosis; hidrosis; hydrometra; hypersalivation; hypogalactia; lymphangitis; lymphocytosis; menalgia; panaris; paranephritis; pericystitis; pneumonia; pneumohaemothorax; polioencephalopathy; pyuria; thromboembolism; tonsillitis.

§ 142. Vocabulary to lesson 22

I. Latin- English vocabulary

achlorhydria, ae f	a complete lack of free hydrochloric acid in the astric juice, achlorhydria
adenalgia, ae f	a painful condition of a gland, adenalgia
adenasthenia, ae f	functional deficiency in a gland, adenasthenia
aërobion, i n	a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates atmospheric oxygen, aerobe (aerobian)
amenorrhoea, ae f	the pathological absence or stoppage of the menstrual discharge from the uterus, amenorrhoea
anaërobion, i n	a microorganism which is able to exist and multiply although deprived of either free oxygen or air, anaerobe
cholecystitis, itidis f	inflammation of the gallbladder, cholecystitis

cystorrhagia, ae f	haemorrhage from the urinary bladder, cystorrhagia
dacryostenōsis, is f	narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis
empyēma, ātis n	an accumulation of pus in a cavity, empyema
enterocolītis, itīdis f	an inflamed condition of the small intestine and the colon, enterocolitis
galactorrhoea, ae f	an excessive flow of milk, galactorrhoea
haemarthrōsis, osis f	extravasation of blood into a joint, haemarthrosis
hidradenītis, itīdis f	inflammation of the sweat glands, hidradenitis
hydromētra, ae f	an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus, hydrometra
hypochylia, ae f	a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened, hypochylia
hyposalivatio, ōnis f	a condition in which there is an abnormal decrease in the secretion of saliva, hyposalivation
lipuria, ae f	the presence of an oily emulsion or fat in the urine, lipuria
lymphostāsis, is f	cessation of the flow of lymph, lymphostasis
megacōlon, i n	a condition in which there is a great dilatation of the large intestine, megacolon
menalgia, ae f	painful menstruation, menalgia
pantalgia, ae f	pain affecting all parts of the body, pantalgia
polimyelītis, itīdis f	an acute inflammation of anterior horn cells of the spinal cord due to polioviruses, polimyelitis
pyogēnus, a, um	or producing pus, pyogenic
pyopneumothōrax, ācis m	an inflammatory condition characterized by the presence of purulent fluid and gas in a pleural cavity, pyopneumothorax
pyosalpinx, ngis f	inflammation of the uterine tube which has progressed to pus formation, pyosalpinx
uraemia, ae f	the condition which is associated with the retention of metabolic products in the blood and disturbance

	of acid-base ratio of the latter, uraemia
xanthopsia, ae f	a disturbance of color vision, when everything appears yellow, xanthopsia
xanthōsis, is f	yellowish discoloration, especially of the skin, xanthosis

II. English -Latin vocabulary

an accumulation of pus in the pericardium, pyopericardium	pyopericardium, i n
achylia, absense of acid and pepsin from the gastric juice	achylia, ae f
acute infflamation of the gray mattwer of the brain	poliencephalītis, itīdis f
chyluria, the condition in which the urine contains lymph	chyluria, ae f
colonorrhagia, haemorrhage from the colon	colonorrhagia, ae f
cystitis, inflammation of the urinary bladder	cystītis, itīdis f
a discharge of pus	pyorrhoea, ae f
a disturbance of color vision when everything appears yellow, xanthopsia	xanthopsia, ae f
aerobe, a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates atmospheric oxygen	aërobion, i n
aerobic, requiring gaseous oxygen in order to live	aërobĭcus, a, um
anaerobe, a microorganism which is able to exist and multiply although deprived of either free oxygen or air	anaërobion, i n
anaerobic, able to sustain life without free oxygen	anaërobĭcus, a, um

dacryorrhoea, an excessive flow of tears	dacryorrhoea, ae f
dropsy, an abnormal collection of fluid in tissue or cavity space	hydrops, ōpis m
dysmenorrhoea, pain occurring in the back and lower abdomen at or about the time of menses	dysmenorrhoea, ae f
embolaemia, a condition in which emboli are present in the blood	embolaemia, ae f
endometritis, an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus	endometrītis, itīdis f
enterogastritis, an inflammation of the small intestine and the stomach	enterogastrītis, itīdis f
enteromegalia, an unusually large size of the intestine	enteromegalia, ae f
an excessive flow of milk, galactorrhoea	galactorrhoea, ae f
any fluid that has passed through the membrane of the skin, transudate	transudātum, i n
galactostasis, an arrest or stagnation in the secretion of milk	galactostāsis, is f
haematosalalpinx, a collection and retention of blood in an uterine tube	haematosalalpinx, ngis f
hidrosis 1) a process of secreting sweat 2) abnormally profuse sweating	hidrōsis, is f
hydrarthrosis, a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint	hydrarthrōsis, is f
hydrometra, an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus	hydromētra , ae f
hypersalivation, excessive secretion of saliva	hypersalivatio, ōnis f
hypogalactia, secretion of too small a quantity of milk	hypogalactia, ae f

inflammation in the nail fold, panaris	panaritium, i n
inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus, endometritis	endometrītis, itīdis f
inflammation of the liver, hepatitis	hepatītis, itīdis f
lymphangitis, inflammation of lymphatic vessels	lymphangītis, itīdis f
lymphocytosis, an increase in the number of lymphocytes	lymphocytōsis, is f
narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland;	dacryostenōsis, is f
panaris, an inflammation in the nail fold	panaritium, i n
paranephritis, an inflammatory condition involving the connective tissue adjacent to the kidney	paranephritīs, itīdis f
pericystitis, an inflammation in which the structures around the urinary bladder are affected	pericystītis, itīdis f
pneumohaemothorax, an accumulation of gas or air and blood in the cavity of the thorax	pneumohaemothōrax, ācis m
pneumonia, an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung	pneumonia, ae f
polioencephalopathy, any pathological condition of the gray matter of the brain	polioencephalopathia, ae f
the presence of air or gas within a thorax, pneumothorax	pneumothōrax, ācis m
the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity, haemotympanum	haemotympānum, i n i
the presence of blood in the urine, haematuria	haematuria, ae f
profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the	rhinorrhoea, ae f

nose, rhinorrhoea	
pyuria, a condition in which pus is present in the urine	pyuria, ae f
a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by emboli, thromboembolia (thromboembolism)	thromboëmbolia, ae f
thromboembolism, a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by emboli	m (thromboëmbolismus, i m) thromboëmbolia, ae f
tonsillitis, inflammation of the a tonsil	tonsillītis, itīdis f
a watery effusion into the cavity of a joint, hydrarthrosis	hydrarthrōsis, is f

Lesson 23

ONE-WORD NAMES OF ENDOGENOUS PATHOLOGICAL CHANGES AND MALFORMATIONS

§ 143. Names of abnormal adhesions and fissures

Conditions of abnormal adhesions of tissues are signified by means of the prefix **sym-** or **syn-** (before the consonants **d, p, t** or vowels) and the final roots defining the place of malformation:

symblephāron, i n – an adhesion of eyelid to the eyeball, symblepharon

syndactylia, ae f – a condition in which two or more fingers or toes are fused, syndactylia.

One-word names of fissures are formed by means of the final root **-schĭsis**:
cystoschĭsis, is f – a congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis
gnathoschĭsis, is f – a congenital fissure in the maxilla, gnathoschisis

§ 144. Names of pathological cavities

Abscesses, cysts and hernias usually belong to pathological cavities.

Abscess (**abscessus, us m**) is an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration. This Latin noun is used mainly with adjectives:
abscessus apicalis – apical abscess, an abscess at the apex of the root of a tooth
abscessus tonsillāris – tonsillar abscess, a suppurative condition of the parenchyma of a tonsil.

Cyst (**cysta, ae f**) is a cavity lined by a well-defined epithelium, fibrous or degenerating tissue. This noun both in Latin and English is mainly used in two-word terms with adjectives and nouns:

cysta choledōchi – choledochus cyst, cystic dilatation in the common bile duct

cysta pancreatīca – pancreatic cyst, a cyst arising within or in close proximity to the pancreas.

Hernia (**hernia, ae f**) is the protrusion of an internal organ through a defect in the wall of the anatomical cavity in which it lies. The noun is used like the previous one with adjectives and nouns:

hernia cerēbri – hernia of the brain, protrusion of the brain through a defect in the skull

hernia inguinālis – inguinal hernia, hernia in the inguinal canal

In one-word terms, the idea of hernia is expressed by the final root **-cele**:

gastrocēle, es f – hernia of the stomach, gasrocele

myocēle, es f – hernia of a muscle, myocele

§ 145. Names of tumors

Names of tumors of a definite organ or tissues are formed by means of final suffix **-ōma** added to the initial root which indicates the localization of abnormal growth. All these names are nouns of the 3rd declension:

angiōma, ātis n – angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or of lymphatic vessels

nephrōma, ātis n – nephroma, a tumor derived from renal substance

osseōma, ātis n – osseoma, a tumor of bone.

Some names of innocent tumors are formed without the suffix -oma:

polŷpus, i m polypus, a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface

verrūca, ae f – a wart, a small circumscribed epidermal tumor.

Both nouns are used in multiword terms:

polŷpus laryngis – a polypus of larynx

verrūca plana – a plane wart.

A malignant tumor or any malignant growth is named cancer – cancer, cri m. This name is used with the nouns and adjectives which define localization of the tumor:

cancer cutis – cancer of the skin

cancer gastris – cancer of the stomach

cancer osteolyticus – osteolytic cancer, a cancer which destroys the bone that it has invaded.

A malignant epithelial tumor is called carcinoma – **carcinōma, ātis n**. This noun is used with adjectives mostly:

carcinōma bronchogenicum – a bronchogenic carcinoma, carcinoma originating from a bronchus

carcinōma cutaneum – carcinoma cutaneum, a squamous-celled carcinoma of the skin.

The name *carcinoma* can also be used as a final root of one-word terms:

adenocarcinōma, ātis n – a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma

chondrocarcinōma, ātis n – a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements, chondrocarcinoma.

§ 146. Names of concrements

A concrement is a pathological concretion – mostly a small mass which has become calcified in a cavity or in the tissue of a hollow anatomical structure. Such a concretion is denoted in Latin by the nouns **concrementum, i n** or **calcūlus, i m** and an adjective defining the localization of the concretion:

concrementum nasāle – nasal calculus

calcūlus dentālis – dental calculus

The names of these concretions may also be expressed by one-word terms by means of the final root -lithus (Greek **lithos** stone) added to initial roots: rhinolīthus, i m = concrementum nasāle
odontolīthus, i m = calcūlus dentālis.

The condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body is called calculus – **calculōsis, is f**. The formation of concretions is named lithiasis – **lithiāsis, is f**. The same word is used as a final root of several one-word terms:

broncholithiāsis, is f – a condition in which calculi occur in the lumina of bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis

cholecystolithiāsis, is f – a condition in which there are gall-stones in the gall bladder or bile duct, cholelithiasis

nephrolithāsis, is f – a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis

urolithiāsis, is f – a morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis

§ 147. Names of abnormal hardening and softening of tissues

Abnormal hardening (induration) of a tissue is expressed by the initial root **scler-** (Greek **skleros** hard) or the final element **-sclerosis**:

sclerodesmia, ae f – abnormal induration of ligaments, sclerodesmia

osteosclerōsis, is f – hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis

Abnormal softening of a tissue is expressed by the final root **-malacia** (Greek **malakia** softness):

chondromalacia, ae f – a pathological softening of a cartilage, chondromalacia

§ 148. Table of initial roots

Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
carcin-	cancer, cri m	cancer	carcin-
hist-	textus, us m	tissue	hist-
lith-	calcūlus, i m concrementum, i n	stone concretion	lith-
mening-	pia mater, arachnoidea mater, dura mater – the membranes which form the covering or sheaths of the spinal cord and brain	pia mater, arachnoidea mater, dura mater	mening-
morph-	forma, ae f	form	morph-
necr-	mortuus, a, um	dead, lifeless	necr-

Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
ne(o)-	novus, a, um	new	ne(o)-
onc-	tumor, ōris m	tumor, swelling	onc-
onych-	unguis, is m	nail	onych-
pachy-	crassus, a, um	thick	pachy-
pyel-	pelvis renālis	pelvis of the kidney	pyel-
sarc-	caro, carnis f	flesh	sarc-
scler-	durus, a, um	hard, hardening	scler-
splanchn-	viscus, ěris n; viscĕra, um n	a viscus; the viscera	splanchn-
spondyl-	vertĕbra, ae f	vertebra	spondyl-
sten-	strictus, a, um	narrow, narrowing	sten-
typhl-	caecum, i n	caecum	typhl-
uran-	palātum, i n	palate	palat-, uran-

Attention! Instead of the initial Greek root **uran-** the Latin root **palat-** can be used: palatoplegia, ae f (palatoplegia, paralysis affecting the soft palate) = uranoplegia, ae f (uranoplegia) palatoschĭsis, is f (palatoschisis, cleft palate, a congenital fissure in the midline of the hard palate) = uranoschĭsis, is f (uranoschisis)

§ 149. Table of final roots

Final root elements	English meaning
-carcinōma	a malignant epithelial tumor
-cele	hernia
-lithiāsis	the formation of concretions
-lĭthus	a concretion
-malacia	pathological softening of an organ or tissue
-morphōsis	any state of the body form
-necrōsis	death of a portion of a tissue

-onychia	any abnormal condition of the nail
-porōsis	abnormal rarefaction of a bone by thinning of its trabeculae
-schĭsis	congenial fissure of a tissue
-sclerōsis	hardening of a tissue
-stenōsis	the constriction or narrowing of an orifice or the lumen of a hollow or tubular organ

§ 150. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

carcin-, hist-, lith-, mening-, morph-, necr-, ne(o)-, onc-, onych-, pachy-, scler-, typhl-.

2. Give the dictionary form of Latin words and Greek equivalents to the Latin ones:

caecum, calcŭlus, cancer, crassus, durus, mortuus, palātum, pelvis, renālis, strictus, textus, viscĕra.

3. Complete orally the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English a full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:

adenocarcinōma; broncholithiāsis; carcinomatōsis; cystoschĭsis; dacryostenōsis; gastrocĕle; histolŷsis; meningiōma; metamorphōsis; micronychia; myocele; necropneumonia; nephrolithiāsis; neoplasma; odontolĭthus; oncolōgus; onychomycōsis; osteonecrōsis; osteoporōsis; pachydactylia; palatoplegia; pyelĭtis; sarcōma; sclerōma; splanchnosclerōsis; spondylĭtis; stenothōrax; typhlectasia; uranoschĭsis.

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

abnormal narrowing of the internal diameter of a vessel; a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements; any diseased condition of the viscera; calculus on the teeth; causing the growth of tumors; congenital cleft of a vertebral arch or arches; congenital fissure of the urinary bladder; hardening of bony spaces; herniation of the uterus; inflammation affecting the pelvis of the kidney and the urinary bladder; inflammation of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord; paralysis affecting the soft palate; pathological softening of a cartilage; separation of a tissue as a result of its death; spasm of the caecum; the formation of concretions; the origin, formation and development of body tissue; the production and evolution of a form; the production of urinary calculi and the morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system.

5. Give the Latin dictionary form and the full definition of each term:

adiponecrosis; angioma; calculosis; cancerogenic (= carcinogenic); carcinoma; cholecystolithiasis; chondroporosis; enterolithiasis; gnathoschisis; macronychia; meningoencephalitis; necraemia; neoarthrosis; oesophagostenosis; oncologist; oncotherapy; onychodystrophy; osteomalacia; pachycheilia; polyposis; rhinolith; sarcomatosis; sclerodermatitis; sialolith; spondylopathy; symblepharon; synphalangism; typhlocele.

§ 151. Vocabulary to lesson 23

I. Latin-English vocabulary

adenocarcinōma, ātis n	a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma
broncholithiāsis, is f	a condition in which calculi occur in the lumina of bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis
carcinomatōsis, is f	a condition in which carcinoma is widely distributed throughout the body, carcinomatosis

cystoschĭsis, is f	a congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis
dacryostenōsis, is f	a narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis
gastrocēle, es f	a hernia of the stomach or of a portion which has become pouched, gastrocele
histolŷsis, is f	a spontaneous dissolution of living organic tissue, histolysis
meningiōma, ātis n	a meningeal tumor, thought to arise from the arachnoidal villi, meningioma
metamorphōsis, is f	a change of a form or structure, metamorphosis
micronychia, ae f	a small nail or small nails, micronychia
necropneumonia, ae f	gangrene of the lung, necropneumonia
nephrolithiāsis, is f	a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or renal calculi, nephrolithiasis
neoplasma, ātis n	any new and morbid formation of tissue, neoplasm
odonthlĭthus, I m	a calculus on the teeth, odontolith
oncolōgus, i m	a specialist treating tumors, oncologist
onychomycōsis, is f	an infection of nails caused by a fungus, onychomycosis
osteonecrōsis, is f	death of bony tissue, osteonecrōsis
osteoporōsis, is f	a rarefaction of bone, osteoporosis
pachydactylia, ae f	abnormal thickening of a finger or toe, pachydactyly
palatoplegia, ae f	paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia
pyelĭtis, itĭdis f	an inflammation of the pelvis of the kidney, pyelitis
sarcōma, ātis n	a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma
sclerōma, ātis n	an area of indurated tissue, particularly in the mucous membrane of the nose or larynx, scleroma
splanchnosclerōsis, is f	hardening of any viscus, splanchnosclerosis
spondylĭtis, itĭdis f	an inflammation of the spine, spondilitis
stenothōrax, ācis m	a short, narrow thorax or chest, stenothorax
typhlectasia, ae f	a dilatation of the caecum, typhlectasia
uranoschĭsis, is f	cleft palate, a congenital fissure in the midline of the hard palate, uranoschisis

II. English –Latin vocabulary

an abnormal thickening of a finger or toe, pachydactyly	pachydactylia, ae f
adiponecrosis, necrosis affecting the fatty tissue of the body	adiponecrōsis, is f
angioma, a tumor composed of blood vessels or lymphatic vessels	angiōma, ātis, n
calculosis, a condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body	calculōsis, is f
a calculus on the teeth, odontolith	odontolīthus, i m
cancerogenic (= carcinogenic), producing carcinoma	cancerogēnus, a, um
carcinoma, a malignant epithelial tumor	carcinōma, ātis n
a carcinoma the fragment of which contains cartilaginous elements, chondroma	chondrōma, ātis n
a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma	adenocarcinōma, ātis n
causing the growth of tumors, oncogenous	oncogēnus, a, um
cholecystolithiasis, a condition in which there are gall-stones in the gall bladder or bile duct	cholecystolithiāsīsis, is f
chondroporosis, a porous condition of cartilage shown in thinning of the cartilage and formation of spaces and sinuses	chondroporōsis, is f
a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis	nephrolithiāsīsis, is f
a congenital cleft of a vertebral arch, spondyloschisis	spondyloschīsis, is f
a congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis	cystoschīsis, is f
any diseased condition of the viscera, splanchnopathy	splanchnopathia, ae f

enterolithiasis, formation of calculi or concretions in the intestine	entherolithiās̄is, is f
gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure in the maxilla	gnathosch̄isis, is f
hardening of bony spaces, osteosclerosis	osteosclerōsis, is f
herniation of the uterus, metrocele	metrocēle, es f
inflammation affecting the pelvis of the kidney and the urinary bladder, pyelocystitis	pyelocyst̄itis, it̄idis f
inflammation of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord, meningitis	meninḡitis, it̄idis f
macronychia, excessive length or size of the nails	macronychia, ae f
meningoencephalitis, an inflammatory condition of the brain and its meninges	meningoencephalitis, it̄idis f
necraemia, a condition in which the blood loses its vitality	necraemia, ae f
nearthrosis, an artificial joint implanted by the surgical operation	nearthrōsis, is f
oesophagostenosis, a narrowing of the oesophagus	oesophagostenōsis, is f
oncologist, a specialist treating tumorous diseases	oncolōgus, i m
oncotherapy, the treatment of tumours	oncotherapia, ae f
onychodystrophy, malformation of the nails du to impaired nutrition	onychodystrophia, ae f
osteomalacia, softening of the bones	osteomalacia, ae f
pachycheilia, abnormal thickness or swelling of the lips	pachycheilia, ae f
paralysis affecting the soft palate, palatoplegia	palatoplegia, ae f
pathological softening of cartilage, chondromalacia	chondromalacia, ae f

polyposis, a condition in which the colon is studded with polypi growing from the mucous membrane	polypōsis, ls f
production of urinary calculi and a morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis	urolithiās̄is, is f
rhinolith, a concretion in the cavity of the nose	rhinolīthus, i m
sarcomatosis, a condition in which a number of sarcomata develop here and there on the body surface	sarcomatōsis, is f
sclerodermatitis, an inflammation and induration of the skin	sclerodermatitis, itīdis f
sialolith, a salivary calculus	sialolīthus, i m
spasm of the caecum, typhlospasm	typhlospasmus, i m
spondylopathy, any disease of the vertebrae	spondylopathia, ae f
symblepharon, adhesion of the eyelid to the eyeball	symblephāron, i n
synphalangism, a condition in which the joints of certain fingers or toes are fused	synphalangismus, i m
the formation of concretions, lithiasis	lithiās̄is, is f
the origin, formation and development of body tissue, histogenesis	histogenēsis, is f
the production and evolution of a form, morphogenesis	morphogenēsis, is f
typhlocele, a hernia involving the caecum	typhlocēle, es f

Lesson 24

NAMES OF DEFORMATIONS OF TISSUE CAUSED BY EXOGENOUS FACTORS. NAMES OF SURGICAL OPERATIONS

§ 152. General names of tissue

deformations caused by different exogenous factors

The most known general names of tissue deformations are the following one-word terms:

deformatio, ōnis f – a destruction of the form, deformation

laesio, ōnis f – an injury, damage suffered by the body

trauma, ātis n – a trauma, injury

vulnus, ěris n – a wound, any interruption by violence or by surgery, in the continuity of the external surface of the body or of the surface of any internal organ

More definite names are the following one-word terms:

avulsio, ōnis f – avulsion, a forcible removal of a portion from a hollow structure

combustio, ōnis f – burn, an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat

congelatio, ōnis f – congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition, caused by freezing

commotio, ōnis f – a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure

compressio, ōnis f – compression, the process of decreasing the volume and increasing the density of the body by means of force applied externally

dislocatio, ōnis f – a dislocation, an abnormal displacement of one bone upon another in a joint

ectopia, ae f – ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or its part

fractūra, ae f – a fracture, a break in the continuity of a bone

luxatio, ōnis f – a luxation, a dislocation of a bone

ruptūra, ae f – a rupture, the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or another anatomical structure. With the same meaning, but only in one-word

terms, the final root – rrhexis (Greek rhexis a break) is used:

metrorrhexis, is f – metrorrhexis, rupture of the uterus

ophthalmorrhexis, is f – ophthalmorrhexis, rupture of the eyeball

prolapsus, us m – prolapse, a sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part.

With the same meaning the final root **-ptōsis** is used:

gastroptōsis, is f – gastroptosis, a downward displacement of the stomach

splenoptōsis, is f – splenoptosis, a prolapse of the spleen

§ 153. Names of surgical operations

The most common names of surgical operations are the following:

operatio, ōnis f – an operation, surgical intervention upon a part of the body

amputatio, ōnis f – an amputation, the surgical removal of a limb or a portion of a limb or of any other appendage

extirpatio, ōnis f – an extirpation, a removal of the entire pathological structure, organ or part

extractio, ōnis f – an extraction, the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body

implantatio, ōnis f – an implantation, the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body

punctūra, ae f (punctio, ōnis f) – a puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it. In one-word terms, the final root **-centēsis** corresponds to the two-word terms which include the noun **puncture** and the second noun signifying the site of this operation, e. g.:

punctūra thorācis = thoracocentēsis punctūra pulmōnis = pneumocentēsis

replantatio, ōnis f – replantation, the replacement a separated by accident part of some anatomical structure back to its natural place.

transplantatio, ōnis f – a transplantation, the operation of transference of a tissue or an organ from one place to an other with the aim of improving or renewing the function

resectio, ōnis f – a resection, a surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e. g. jaw, stomach, colon etc.

sectio, ōnis f – a section, the act of cutting

§ 154. Prefixes widely used in surgical names

Latin prefix	Meaning	Latin example	English equivalent and its meaning
a-, ab-	away, from	avulsio, ōnis f aberratio, ōnis f	avulsion, the forcible removing a portion from a hollow structure aberration, a deviation from the normal
de(s)-	away, from	decapsulatio, ōnis f descensus, us m	decapsulation, surgical removal of a capsule or sheath descent, the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part
dis-	apart, separation	disarticulatio, ōnis f	disarticulation, separation or amputation in a joint without cutting through bone
im-, in-	in, into	implantātum, i n invasio, ōnis f	implant, any piece of tissue for use as a graft invasion, the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host
e-, ex-	from,	extractio, ōnis f	extraction, the act or process of

	out of	evisceratio, ōnis f	drawing out a part of body or a foreign body evisceration, removal of the contents of an organ or its part
re-	again	replantatio, ōnis f	replantation, the replacement a separated by accident part of some anatomical structure back to its natural place
trans-	through, across	transplantatio, ōnis f	transplantation, the operation of transfer of tissue from one site to another

§ 155. Table of initial roots

Greek roots and their variants	Latin equivalents in dictionary form	English meaning	English word building elements
blephar-	palpēbra, ae f	eyelid	blephar-
chir-	manus, us f	hand	chir-
colp-	vagīna, ae f	vagina	colp-
cry-	gelu, us n	cold	cry-
crypt-	latens, ntis	hidden	crypt-
desm-	ligamentum, i n	ligament	desm-
embry-	1) embryo, ōnis m 2) fetus, us m	1) embryo, a living organism from the fertilized ovum to the first 8 weeks of intrauterine life 2) fetus, a living organism after first 8 weeks of intrauterine life	embry-
kerat-	cornea, ae f	1) cornea 2) the horny layer	kerat-

		of the skin	
lapar-	abdōmen, ĩnis n	abdomen	lapar-
pneum-, pneumon-	pulmo, ōnis m	lung	pneum-, pneumon-
salping-	1) tuba uterīna 2) tuba auditīva (= tuba auditoria)	1) the uterine tube 2) the pharyngotympanic tube (=auditory tube)	salping-
ten-	tendo, ĩnis m	tendon	ten-
top-	locus, i m	place	top-

§ 156. Table of final roots

Final roots elements	English meaning
-chirurgia	surgical operation
-centēsis	tapping or puncture of a cavity, -centesis
-dēsīs	operative fixation of a structure, -desis
-ectomia	amputation or excision of an organ or its part, -ectomy
-implantatio	the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body, -implantation
-lysis	surgical freeing of a tissue from adhesions
-pēxia	surgical fixation by means of sutures, -pexis, -pexy
-plastīca	an operation dependent upon the transposition of skin or other tissue, -plasty
-rrhaphia	the suturing together of the cut or torn edges of a wound, -rrhaphy
-rrhexis	rupture or bursting of an organ or vessel, -rhexis
-stōma	an artificial opening created by surgical operation
-stomia	creation of an artificial opening, -stomy
-tomia	operative cutting, incision or section, -tomy
-transplantatio	the operation of transference of a tissue or an organ from one place to an other with the aim of improving or renewing the

Final roots elements	English meaning
	function, -transplantation

§ 157. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of Latin equivalents corresponding to the following Greek roots:

blephar-, chir-, colp-, cry-, crypt-, desm-, embryo-, kerat-, lapar-, pneum-, salping-, ten-, top-.

2. Give the dictionary form of Latin words and Greek equivalents to the Latin ones:

abdōmen, cornea, embryo, gelu, latens, locus, manus, palpēbra, pulmo, tendo, tuba uterīna.

3. Complete orally the dictionary form of each Latin noun and define the meaning of each word building element. Write down in English the full definition of each term and its English one-word equivalent:

avulsio; blepharītis; blepharoplastīca; colpotomia; combustio; cryochirurgia; cryotherapia; cryptophthalmia; decapsulatio; descensus; desmorrhexis; desmurgia; disarticulatio; embryologia; embryotomia; evisceratio; gastrostōma; hyperkeratōsis; implantatio; implantātum; keratotomia; laparoscopia; laparogastrostomia; pneumocentēsis; prolapsus; pneumoēmpyēma; replantatio; resection; salpingectomy; salpingolýsis; spondyloděsis; tenorrhaphia; tenotomia; thoracocentēsis; toponeurōsis.

4. Make up the Latin dictionary form of one-word terms with the following meaning:

a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure; adenoma of the eyelid; a medical practitioner skilled in general surgery, who specializes in the operative

treatment of diseases of the nervous system; a neoplasm originating in embryonic elements or blighted ovum; any disease affecting ligaments; any morbid condition affecting the lungs; any plastic operation to repair or reconstruct the urinary bladder; any plastic surgical operation on the vagina; a tumor consisting of connective-tissue element; incision of the abdominal wall and excision of the uterus; inflammation of abdominal muscles; inflammation of the cornea; polypus of the vagina; puncture of the cornea; removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part; retention of the menstrual flow due to congenital acquired genital-canal stenosis; surgical operation on small structures with the aid of a microscope; the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body; the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host; the operation for the relief of hernia and the resultant reduction of the size of the latter; the operation of removal of the adenoid growth by excision; the operation of transference of a tissue of an organ from one place to an other with the aim of improving or renewing a function; the surgical establishment of a permanent or semipermanent opening into the urinary bladder; total or partial surgical removal of diseased lung tissue; use of cold or freezing as a therapeutic measure.

5. Give the full definition of each term and its Latin dictionary form:

arthrocentesis; autoplasty; blepharotomy; colpocystotomy;
colpomyomectomy; colpohysteropexy; congelation; cryosurgery; cryptolith;
cryptopsoriasis; desmalgia; desmotomy; dislocation; ectopia; embryectomy;
embryopathology; implant; implantation; keratomycosis; keratoplasty;
oesophagostoma; pneumorrhaphy; pneumotomy; puncture; salpingogram;
salpingopexy; tenodesis; tenolysis; tonsillotomy; topography; topophobia.

§ 158. Vocabulary to lesson 24

I. Latin-English vocabulary

avulsion, ōnis f	a forcible removing a portion from a hollow structure, avulsion
blepharītis, itīdis f	an inflammation of the eyelids, blepharitis
blepharoplastīca, ae f	a plastic operation for restoration of an eyelid or any part of it, blepharoplasty
colpotomia, ae f	any cutting operation on the vagina, colpotomy
combustio, ōnis f	an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat, burn
cryochirurgia, ae f	surgical procedures in which tissue is destroyed by freezing, cryosurgery
cryotherapia, ae f	the science of the use of cold as a therapeutic measure, cryotherapy
cryptophthalmia, ae f	a congenital adhesion of the eyelids so that the eyeballs can not be seen, cryptophthalmia
decapsulatio, ōnis f	a surgical removal of a capsule or sheath, decapsulation
desmorrhēxis, is f	rupture of a ligament, desmorrhēxis
desmurgia, ae f	the science of applying ligatures or bandages to a part, desmurgy
disarticulatio, ōnis f	a separation or amputation at a joint, without cutting through bone, disarticulation
embryologia, ae f	a branch of biological science which is concerned with the origin and development of the embryo from the ovum to the stage of extra-uterine life, embryology
embryotomia, ae f	a dissection of an embryo or fetus, embryotomy
evisceratio, ōnis f	a removal of the contents of an organ or part, evisceration
gastrostōma, ātis n	a natural or artificial gastric fistula, gastrostoma
hyperkeratōsis, is f	a hypertrophy of the stratum corneum of the skin,

	hyperkeratosis
implantatio, ōnis f	the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body, implantation
keratotomia, ae f	making an incision into the cornea, keratotomy
laparoscopia, ae f	the act or process of examining the peritoneal cavity and its contents by means of a laparoscope, laparoscopy
laparogastrostomia, ae f	the operation to create an artificial opening in the stomach, laparogastrostomy
pneumocentēsis, is f	a lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of a cavity, pneumocentesis
pneumoëmpyēma, ātis n	the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space, pneumoëmpyema
prolapsus, us m	the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part, prolapse
replantatio, ōnis f	the replacement a separated by accident part of some anatomical structure back to its natural place, a replantation
resectio, ōnis f	a surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e. g. jaw, stomach, etc., a resection
salpingectomy, ae f	an excision of an uterine tube, salpingectomy
salpingolýsis, is f	breaking-down of adhesions in an uterine tube, salpingolysis
spondylodēsis, is f	the operation of fusion of the spine, usually by a bone graft, spondylodesis
tenorrhaphia, ae f	an operation for the suturing of the divided ends of a tendon, tenorrhaphy
tenotomia, ae f	the cutting of a tendon, tenotomy
thoracocentēsis, is f	a puncture of the wall of the thorax to remove fluid, thoracocentesis

toponeurōsis, is f	localized neurosis, a functional derangement in any part of the body, toponeurosis
--------------------	--

II. English-Latin vocabulary

the act or process of drawing out a part of body or a foreign body, extraction	tenodēsis, is f
adenoma of the eyelid, blepharoadenoma	blepharoadenōma, ātis n
arthrocentesis, the surgical procedure of puncturing a joint	arthrocentēsis, is f
autoplasty, the repair of a diseased or injured tissue or organ by the material taken from another part of the body	autoplastīca, ae f
blepharotomy, an incision of an eyelid	blepharotomia, ae f
colpocystotomy, a surgical incision into the urinary bladder through the wall of the vagina	colpocystotomia, ae f
colpohysteropexy, the operative fixation of the uterus through the vagina	colpohysteropexia, ae f
colpomyomectomy, a removal of a myoma from the uterus by the vaginal route	colpomyomectomia, ae f
a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure, concussion	commotio, ōnis f
congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition, caused by freezing	congelatio, ōnis f
cryosurgery, surgical procedures in which tissue is destroyed by freezing	cryochirurgia, ae f
cryptolith, a calculus contained in a crypt	cryptolīthus, i m
cryptopsoriasis, hidden, latent psoriasis	cryptopsoriāsis, is f
desmalgia, pain in a ligament	desmalgia, ae f
any disease affecting the ligaments,	desmopathia, ae f

desmopathia	
dislocation, abnormal displacement of one bone upon another in a joint	dislocatio, ōnis f
ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or its part	ectopia, ae f
embryoectomy, the surgical removal of the embryo	embryoëctomia, ae f
embryopathology, the branch of pathology concerned with defective or abnormal development of embryo	embryopathologia, ae f
the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host, invasion	invasio, ōnis f tenolýsis, is f
implant, any piece of tissue used as a graft	implantātum, i n
incision of the abdominal wall and excision of the uterus, laparohysterectomy	laparohysterectomy, ae f
inflammation of the abdominal muscles, laparomyositis	laparomyosītis, itīdis f
the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body, implantation	implantatio, ōnis f extractio, ōnis f
keratomycosis, a disease of cornea caused by a fungus	keratomycōsis, is f
keratoplasty, plastic surgery on the cornea	keratoplastīca, ae f
a medical practitioner skilled in general surgery who specializes in the operative treatment of diseases of the nervous system, a neurosurgeon	neurochirurgus, i m
any morbid condition affecting the lungs, pneumopathy	pneumopathia, ae f
oesophagostoma, any opening into the esophagus apart from the normal entrance	oesophagostōma, ātis n

and exit	
the operation for the relief of hernia and the resultant reduction of the latter, herniotomia	herniotomia, ae f
the operation of removal of the adenoid growth by excision, adenotomy	adenotomia, ae f
the operation of transference of a tissue of an organ from one place to an other with the aim of improving or renewing of a function, transplantation	transplantatio, ōnis f
ophthalmorrhaxis, rupture of the eyeball	ophthalmorrhaxis, is f
any plastic operation to repair or reconstruct the urinary bladder, cystoplasty	cystoplastīca, ae f
any plastic surgical operation on the vagina, colpoplasty	colpoplastīca, ae f
a polypus of the vagina, colpopolypus	colpopolŷpus , i m
pneumocentesis, a lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of the cavity	pneumocentēsis, is f
pneumoempyema, the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space	pneumoēmpyēma, ātis n
pneumorrhaphy, the operation of suturing a wound of the lung	pneumorrhaphia, ae f
pneumotomy, making an incision into the lung	pneumotomia, ae f
a prolapse, the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part	prolapsus, us m
puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content	punctura, ae f; punctio, ōnis f
a puncture of the cornea, keratocentesis	keratocentēsis, is f
removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part, amputation	amputatio, ōnis f; extirpatio, ōnis f
retention of the menstrual flow due to	cryptomenorrhoea, ae f

congenital or acquired genital canal stenosis, cryptomenorrhoea	
salpingogram, the radiograph made during the radiographic visualization of the uterus and uterine tubes	salpingogramma, ātis n
salpingopexy, surgical fixation of the uterine tube	salpingopexia, ae f
tenolysis, the freeing of a tendon from adhesions	tenolysis, is f
the surgical establishment of a permanent or semipermanent opening into the urinary bladder, cystostomy	cystostomia, ae f
a surgical operation on small structures with the aid of a microscope, microsurgery	microchirurgia, ae f
tonsillotomy, the surgical operation for removal of a part of a tonsil	tonsillotomia, ae f
topography, the anatomical description of any particular part of the body	topographia, ae f
topophobia, unreasoned fear of certain places	topophobia, ae f
total or partial surgical removal of diseased lung tissue, pneumonectomy	pneumonectomy, ae f
a tumor consisting of connective tissue, desmoneoplasm	desmoneoplasma, ātis n
use of cold or freezing as a therapeutic measure, cryotherapy	cryotherapia, ae f

Lesson 25

MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 1

§ 159. The structure and vocabulary of multiword clinical terms

Multiword terms are widely used in medical diagnoses. Any multiword term consists, as a rule, of two or three words. The noun containing the cardinal information of the term is placed first, and then one or two nouns or one or two adjectives follow. The second and third nouns indicate the localization of the diseased organ or tissue; adjectives give qualitative and quantitative characteristics of the morbid condition:

infarctus cerēbri – cerebral infarct, an infarct of cerebral tissue due to failure of blood supply resulting from vascular thrombosis, embolism or spasm

tachycardia ventricūli sinistri – tachycardia of the left ventricle, abnormally rapid rate of the left ventricle

anaemia haemorrhagīca – haemorrhagic anaemia, anaemia caused by acute or chronic loss of blood because of whatever cause

myocardītis bacterialis acuta – acute bacterial myocarditis, acute inflammation of the myocardium due to invasion of bacteria

The combination of a noun and an adjective after the first noun of the term can be present too:

cirrhōsis biliāris infantium – biliary cirrhosis of children, cirrhosis of young children due to congenital anomalies of the bile ducts

luxatio coxae congenīta – congenital dislocation of the hip

To sum up, we can say that multiword clinical terms are built similar to anatomical ones. First of all, the dictionary form of every word should be given. After that, the term is built according to the already known rules.

§ 160. Exercises.

1. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into English:

abdōmen acūtum; *diabētes* mellītus; diagnōsis aetiologīca; febris continua; fetor ex ore sive *halitōsis*; herpes labiālis; indigestio gastris; *infarctus* thrombotīcus; insufficientia renālis chronīca; morbus maculōsus neonatōrum; *palpatio* et *percussio* hepātis; *polyuria* diabetīca; *prophylaxis* morbōrum allergicōrum; *syndrōmum* unguium flavōrum; *toxicōses* gravidārum; vitium cordis congenītum

2. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into Latin:

acute suppurative *bronchitis*; allergic *stomatitis*; cardinal *symptoms*; cerebrospinal hereditary *paralysis*; chronic superficial *dermatitis*; *collapse* of the lung; *endogenous eczema*; *exogenous* tuberculosis; hypoglycaemic *coma*; intermittent hepatic fever; plasma *transfusion*; primary atypical *pneumonia*; simple *urethritis*; spongiform subacute *encephalopathy*; *syndrome* of the cerebral peduncle; tissue *emphysema*; ultrasonic *tomography*

§ 161. Vocabulary to lesson 25

I. Latin – English vocabulary

acūtus, a, um	acute
aetiologīcus, a, um	aetiologic, based on the aetiology – the science of the investigation of the cause or origin of any phenomenon
chronīcus, a, um	chronic, long continued
congenītus, a, um	congenital
continuus, a, um	continued
diabētes, ae m	diabetes, a group of diseases in which there is polyuria and a disturbed metabolism
diabetīcus, a, um	diabetic, suffering from or relating to diabetes
diagnōsis, is f	diagnosis, medical denotation of the disease from

	which a person suffers
febris, is f	fever
foetor, ōris m	fetor, a foul odour or stench
gravīda, ae f	gravida, a woman who is pregnant
halitōsis, is f	halitosis, fetid or offensive breath
herpes, ētis m	herpes, inflammation of the skin or mucous embrane, with clusters of deep-seated vesicles
indigestio, ōnis f	indigestion, any disturbance of the normal process of digestion
infarctus, us m	infarct (infarction), a wedge-shaped area of dead tissue, with or without haemorrhage, produced by the obstruction of an end artery
insufficiētia, ae f	insufficiency, the state of being inadequate to perform normal function
maculōsus, a, um	a maculate, marked by maculae
mellītus, a, um (diabētes)	mellitus (diabetes), characterized by a high level of blood sugar
morbus, i m	a disease
meonatus, i m	a newly born child (a boy)
palpatio, ōnis f	palpation, the method of physical examination in which the hands are applied to the surface of the body, so that by sense of touch information is obtained about the condition of inner organs
percussio, ōnis f	percussion, the art of striking the thoracic or abdominal wall in order to produce sound vibration from which the nature of the underlying structures can be assessed
polyuria, ae f	polyuria, increase in the amount of the excreted urine
prophylaxis, is f	prophylaxis, the art of preventing disease
sive	or

syndrōmum	a syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease
thrombolytĭcus	thrombotic, characterized or caused by thrombosis
toxicōsis, is f	toxicosis, the pathological condition caused by the adsorption of poison
vitium	a defect or a vice

II. English – Latin vocabulary

acute	acūtus, a, um
alimentary	alimentarius, a, um
cardinal	cardinālis, e
chronic	chronĭcus, a, um
collapse, a state of extreme weakness with physical and mental depression	collapsus, us m
coma, the state of complete loss of consciousness from which the patient cannot be roused by any ordinary external stimulus	coma, ātis n
eczema, a non-contagious inflammatory disease of the skin with much itching and burning	eczēma, ātis n
emphysema, a condition in which the alveoli of the lungs are dilated	emphysēma, ātis n
endogenous, having origin within the organism	endogēnus, a, um
exogenous, belonging to aetiological factors outside the organism	exogēnus, a, um
fever	febris, is f
hereditary	hereditarius, a, um
hypoglycaemic, relating or belonging to, or bringing about hypoglycaemia, a low blood sugar concentration	hypoglycaemĭcus, a, um

intermittent, coming and going at intervals	intermittens, ntis
paralysis, loss of motor power due to a functional or organic disorder of neural or neuromuscular mechanismus	paralýsis, is f
plasma, the fluid portion of the blood in which the blood corpuscles are suspended	plasma, ātis n
pneumonia, an inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung	pneumonia, ae f
peduncle	peduncŭlus, i m
primary	primarius, a, um
spongiform, having resemblance to a sponge	spongiformis, e
subacute, (disease) running a moderately rapid and severe course for which the word acute would not be appropriate	subacŭtus, a, um
suppurative, pus-forming	suppuratīvus, a, um
a symptom, the consciousness of a disturbance in a bodily function	symptōma, ātis n
a syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease	syndrōmum, i n
a tissue	textus, us m
a transfusion, the introduction into the blood vessels of the circulatory system of sterile fluids such as blood, plasma, serum and other solutions	transfusio, ōnis f
tomography, body-section radiography	tomographia, ae f
ultrasonic, ultrasound	ultrasonarius, a, um

Lesson 26

MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 2

§ 162. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into English:

alopecia occipitālis neonatōrum; *gastrorrhoea* continua chronica; *granulōma* benignum glandūlae thyroideae; *infectio* latens; infammatio bacteriālis; insufficientia arteriārum mesentericārum; *lymphangiōma* simplex; *melanōsis* irīdis; *myasthenia* laryngis; *myelītis* traumatica; *neuralgia* faciālis vera; *neurītis* puerperālis; *osteītis* deformans; *osteōma* spongiōsum; *prolapsus* recti; *psychōsis* senīlis; situs viscērum inversus; *spasmus* intestinōrum.

2. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into Latin:

acquired immune deficiency *syndrome* (AIDS); benign lymphocytic *meningitis*; cerebral *oedema*; chronic *glossitis* with *anaemia*; diffuse *goitre*; direct *metastasis*; *dropsy* of the gall bladder; fetal gigantism; geminated composite *odontome*; intravenous *narcosis*; infective *hepatitis*; monostotic fibrous *dysplasia*; odontogenic *fibroma*; pelvic *haematoma*; postoperative *thrombosis*; *psychogenic* headache; secondary *glaucoma*; senile *osteoporosis*; viral *enteritis*.

§ 163. Vocabulary to lesson 26

I. Latin – English vocabulary

alopecia, ae f	alopecia, loss of hair
bacteriālis, e	bacterial, belonging to or consisting of bacteria
benignus, a, um	benign
continuus, a, um	continued
deformans, ntis	deforming
gastrorrhoea, ae f	gastrorrhoea, the secretion by the stomach of an abnormally large quantity of gastric juice or of mucus
granulōma, ātis n	a granuloma, a tumour composed of granulation tissue
infectio, ōnis f	an infection, the invasion of a pathogenic organism into

	the body and its subsequent multiplication
inflammatio, ōnis f	an inflammation
insufficiētia, ae f	insufficiency
inversus, a, um	inverse
latens, ntis	hidden
lymphangiōma, ātis n	lymphangioma, a tumor formed of lymphatic tissue
mesenterīcus, a, um	mesenteric
melanōsis, is f	melanosis, an abnormal deposition of the black pigment (melanin) in the skin or other tissues
myasthenia, ae f	myasthenia, weakness of muscles from whatever cause
myelītis, itīdis f	myelitis, an inflammation of the bone marrow
neuralgia, ae f	neuralgia, a painful affection of the nerves due to functional disturbances or to neuritis
neurītis, itīdis f	neuritis, an inflammation of a nerve
osteītis, itīdis f	osteitis, an inflammation of a bone due to infection or injury
osteōma, ātis n	osteoma, an innocent tumor of a bone
prolapsus, us m	prolapse, the sinking down or protrusion of a part or viscus
psychōsis, is f	psychosis, any kind of mental disorder
puerperālis, e	puerperal
senīlis, e	senile
situs, us m	a position, a site
spasmus, i m	a spasm, a sudden, powerful, involuntary contraction of a muscle
spongiōsus, a, um	spongy (spongious), full of small holes, like a sponge
traumatīcus, a, um	traumatic
verus, a, um	true
viscus, ěris n	a viscus or viscera, the internal organs of the body which are closely related to the great serous cavities – pleural, pericardial or peritoneal

II. English – Latin vocabulary

acquired	acquisītus, a, um
----------	-------------------

benign	benignus, a, um
composite	compositus, a, um
deficiency	deficientia, ae f
diffuse	diffusus, a, um
direct	directus, a, um
dropsy	hydrops, ōpis m
dysplasia, abnormal development of tissue	dysplasia, ae f
enteritis, inflammation of the mucous membrane of the intestines	enteritis, itidis f
fetal	fetalis, e
fibroma, an innocent tumor composed chiefly of connective tissue	fibrōma, ātis n
fibrous	fibrōsus, a, um
geminated	geminātus, a, um
gigantism, a condition of excessive tallness	gigantismus, i m
glaucoma, a condition of increased intraocular pressure and its consequences	glaucōma, ātis n
glossitis, an inflammation of the tongue	glossitis, itidis f
goitre, an enlargement of the thyroid gland	struma, ae f
headache	dolor (ōris m) capitis
haematoma, a tumor or swelling composed of blood	haematōma, ātis n
immune	immūnus, a, um
immunodeficiency	immunodeficientia, ae f
infective	infectivus, a, um
intravenous	intravenōsus, a, um
lymphocytic	lymphocyticus, a, um
metastasis, the transfer of disease from its primary site to distant parts of the body by blood vessels, lymphatics or direct contiguity	metastāsis, is f
monostotic, pertaining to a single bone	monostoticus, a, um
narcosis, stupor produced by drugs and tending to insensibility and paralysis	narcōsis, is f

odontome, a solid or cystic tumour occurring in the jaws which is derived from cells concerned in tooth development	odontōma, ātis n
odontogenic, relating to the development of the teeth	odontogēnus, a, um
oedema, the presence of excessive amounts of fluid in the intercellular tissue spaces of the body	oedēma, ātis n
osteoporosis, a rarefaction of bone	osteoporōsis, is f
postoperative	postoperatīvus, a, um
psychogenic, developing or originating because of mental causes	psychogēnus, a, um
secondary	secundarius, a, um
senile	senīlis, e
thrombosis, intravascular coagulation during life, producing a thrombus	thrombōsis, is f
viral	virālis, e

LESSON 27

MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 3

§ 164. Exercises

1. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into English:

abscessus gingivālis; *avulsio* nervi phrenīci; calcūlus venōsus; *carcinōma* in situ; *combustio* thermālis faciēi; *commotio* cerēbri; *congelatio* digitōrum pedis dextri; *ectopia* oculi; *erosio* cervīcis utēri; *extractio* corpōris aliēni; *polýpi* laryngis; *punctio* lumbālis; ruptūra ligamentōrum hepātis; *sectio* cadavēris; *transplantātum* corneae; ulcus perfōrans duodēni; *verrūcae* planae.

2. Give the dictionary form of every word and the full definition of the italicized words; translate the multiword terms into Latin:

breast *amputation*; chemical burn of the oesophagus; closed fracture of the right femur; *concussion* of the retina; *evisceration* of the eye; functional aortic *stenosis*; internal injury; lung calculi; open operation; partial *ophthalmoplegy*; *resection* of a joint and a rib; splenic *puncture*; subcutaneous wound; *replantation* of the left hand; tendon *transplantation*; traumatic *erythema*; *ulceration* of the stomach.

§ 165. Vocabulary to lesson 27

I. Latin – English vocabulary

abscessus, us m	abscess, an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration
aliēnus, a, um	foreign
avulsio, ōnis f	avulsion, the forcible removing a portion from a follow structure
combustio, ōnis f	burn, an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat
commotio, ōnis f	a concussion or a violent shaking of a structure
congelatio, ōnis f	congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition caused by freezing
ectopia, ae f	ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or part
erosio, ōnis f	erosion, any superficial destructive process
extractio, ōnis f	extraction, the act or process of drawing out a part of body or foreign body
gingivālis, e	gingival
partiālis, e	partial
planus, a, um	plane
phrenīcus, a, um	phrenic

perforans, ntis	perforating
polypus, i m	a polyp, a tumor with a stalk arising from mucous membranes or the body surface
punctio, ōnis f	a puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it
ruptura, ae f	rupture, the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of a bone or another structure
sectio, ōnis f	a section, the act of cutting
sectio cadaveris	a post - mortem examination of dead body
thermalis, e	thermal
transplantatum, i n	a transplant, a piece of tissue to transfer from one site to another
verruca, ae f	a wart

II. English – Latin vocabulary

amputation, the surgical removal of limb or a portion of a limb or of any other appendage	amputatio, ōnis f
aortic	aorticus, a, um
breast	mamma, ae f
burn	combustio, ōnis f
calculus (plur. calculi), a solid pathological concretion	calcūlus, i m
chemical	chemicus, a, um
closed	clausus, a, um
concussion, a violent shaking of a structure	commotio, ōnis f
erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia	erythēma, ātis n
fracture, a break in the continuity of a bone	fractūra, ae f
functional	functionālis, e
ingury	laesio, ōnis f
open	apertus, a, um
operation	operatio, ōnis f

ophthalmoplegia, palsy (paralysis) of the ocular muscles	ophthalmoplegia, ae f
partial	partiālis, e
puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it	punctio, ōnis f
resection, surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e.g. jaw, stomach, colon etc.	resectio, ōnis f
splenic	splenīcus, a, um

§ 166 Model (Sample) of the final test in clinical terminology

1. Give Greek initial roots and Latin equivalents (in the dictionary form) with the following meaning:

1) ear 2) child 3) head 4) voice 5) quick 6) short 7) many 8) lacrimal sac

2. Compose one-word terms with the dictionary form with the following meaning:

1) specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution 2) results of quantitative and qualitative examination of blood 3) any kind of pain affecting a joint 4) any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair 5) the origin and development of bone marrow 6) a person with an unusually small size of head 7) acute inflammation of the gray mater of the brain 8) calculus on the teeth

3. Write down the Latin dictionary form and give the full definition of the following terms in English:

1) iatrogenic 2) psychiatrist 3) apnea 4) phlebography 5) erythema
6) megaduodenum 7) galactostasis 8) typhlocele

4. Give the dictionary form of each word and the full definition of italicized words; translate into Latin the multiword terms:

- 1) acquired immune deficiency *syndrome*
- 2) secondary *glaucoma*
- 3) *replantation* of the left hand
- 4) partial *ophthalmoplegy*
- 5) chemical burn of the oesophagus
- 6) *dropsy* of the gall bladder
- 7) monostotic fibrous *dysplasia*
- 8) benign lymphocytic *meningitis*

LATIN – ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

abdōmen, ĩnis n abdomen

abscessus, us m an accumulation of pus circumscribed in a cavity produced by tissue disintegration, abscess

achlorhydria, ae f complete lack of free hydrochloric acid in the gastric juice, achlorhydria

acūtus, a, um acute

adenalgia, ae f a painful condition of a gland, adenalgia

adenasthenia, ae f functional deficiency in a gland, adenasthenia

adenocarcinōma, ātis n
a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and connective tissue, adenocarcinoma

aërobion, i n a microorganism which utilizes and assimilates

atmospheric oxygen during growth, aerobe, aerobion

aetiologĩcus, a, um aetiologic, based on the aetiology – the science of the investigation of the cause or origin

aliēnus, a, um foreign

allergĩcus, a, um allergic

alopecia, ae f loss of hair, alopecia

amenorrhoea, ae f the pathological absence or stoppage of the menstrual discharge from the uterus, amenorrhoea

amnesia, ae f loss of memory of varying degree, amnesia

anaërobion, i n a microorganism which is able to exist and multiply being deprived of either free oxygen or air, anaerobe

anaesthesiolōgus, i m a specialist in the administration of anaesthetics, anaesthesiologist

- angiopathia, ae f** any disease of blood vessels, angiopathy
- anthropogēnus, a, um** caused by human activities
- anthropologia, ae f** science studying the man in the process of his evolution, anthropology
- anthropolōgus, i m** specialist studying the man in the process of his evolution, anthropologist
- apodia, ae f** congenital absence of feet, apodia
- arteria, ae f** artery
- arthromalacia, ae f** softening of the joints, arthromalacia
- asthenia, ae f** loss of vital forces, asthenia
- autohaemotherapia, ae f** a method of treatment in which the patient's own blood is administered to him, autohaemotherapy
- autopepsia, ae f** the process of spontaneous disintegration of cells and tissues resulting from the action of intracellular enzymes, autopepsia
- avulsio, ōnis f** the forcible removing a portion from a hollow structure, avulsion
- B**
- bacteriālis, e** bacterial, originating or derived from, belonging to or consisting of bacteria
- benignus, a, um** benign
- biologia, ae f** science studying forms of life and living organisms, biology
- blepharītis, itīdis f** inflammation of the eyelids, blepharitis
- blepharoplastīca, ae f** a plastic operation to restore an eyelid, blepharoplasty
- brachycephālus, i m** an individual with disproportionately short head, brachycephalic
- brachydactylia, ae f** a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia
- bradyphagia, ae f** slowing of swallowing, bradyphagia
- bradypnoë, ës f** an abnormally slow rate of breathing, bradypnoea
- broncholithiāsis, is f** the condition

in which calculi occur in the lumen of bronchial tubes, broncholithiasis

C

cadāver, ěris n a corps; a lifeless human body

calcūlus, i m a solid pathological concretion, usually of inorganic matter, formed in any part of the body, calculus

carcinōma, ātis n a malignant epithelial tumor, carcinoma

carcinomatōsis, is f the condition in which carcinoma is widely distributed throughout the body, carcinomatosis

cardiogĕnus, a, um cardiogenic, arising because of the heart

cardiolōgus, i m a specialist treating heart diseases, cardiologist

cerĕbrum, i n cerebrum

cervix, ĩcis f cervix

cholecystītis, itīdis f inflammation of the gallbladder, cholecystitis

chondropathia, ae f any disease

affecting a cartilage, chondropathy

chronĭcus, a, um chronic, long continued

chylothōrax, ācis m the condition in which there is an effusion of the lymph into the thoracic cavity, chylothorax

colpotomia, ae f any cutting operation on the vagina, colpotomy

combustio, ōnis f burn, an injury caused by heat or by chemical or physical agents having an effect similar to heat, combustion

commotio, ōnis f a concussion or a violent shaking of a structure, concussion

congelatio, ōnis f frostbite, a local morbid condition caused by freezing, congelation

congenĭtus, a, um congenital

continuus, a, um continued

cor, cordis n heart

cornea, ae f cornea

corpus, ōris n body

craniometria, ae f measurement of the skull, craniometry

cryochirurgia, ae f surgical

procedures in which tissue is
destroyed by freezing,
cryosurgery

cryotherapia, ae f the science of
the use of cold as a therapeutic
measure, cryotherapy

cryptophthalmia, ae f congenital
adhesion of the eyelids so that
the eyeballs can not be seen,
cryptophthalmia

cystorrhagia, ae f haemorrhage
from the urinary bladder,
cystorrhagia

cystoschĭsis, is f a congenital
fissure of urinary bladder,
cystoschisis

D

dacryostenōsis, is f – narrowing or
stricture of the duct of the
lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis

dactylospasmus, ae f spasmodic
contraction of a finger or toe,
dactylospasm

decapsulatio, ōnis f surgical
removal of a capsule or sheath,

decapsulation

deformans, ntis deforming

dermatomycōsis, is f a generic
term for all cutaneous infections
due to fungi, dermatomycosis

dermatōsis, is f any disease of the
skin, dermatosis

descensus, us m the sinking down
or protrusion of a viscus or its
part, descent

desmorrhēsis, is f rupture of a
ligament, desmorrhēsis

desmurgia, ae f the science of
applying ligatures or bandages to
a part, desmurgy

dexter, tra, trum right

diabētes, ae m anyone of a group
of diseases in which there is
polyuria and a disturbed
metabolism, diabetes

diabetĭcus, a, um diabetic,
suffering from or relating to
diabetes

diagnōsis, is f medical denotation of
the disease from which a person
suffers, diagnosis

digĭtus, i m finger, toe

disarticulatio, ōnis f separation or amputation in a joint, without cutting through bone, disarticulation

dolichocephalia, ae f the state of having a relatively long skull, dolichocephalia

duodēnum, i n duodenum

dysgeusia, ae f impairment or perversion of the sense of taste, dysgeusia

dysthyreōsis, is f imperfect functioning of the thyroid gland, dysthyreosis

E

ectopia, ae f a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or part, ectopia

embryologia, ae f the branch of biological science which is concerned with the origin and development of the embryo from the ovum to the stage of extrauterine life, embryology

embryotomia, ae f dissection of an

embryo or fetus, embryotomy

empyēma, ātis n a collection of pus in a cavity, empyema

encephalogramma, ātis n any X-ray film obtained in the radiological examination of the ventricles and subarachnoid space of the brain, encephalogram

enterocolītis, itīdis f an inflamed condition of the small intestine and the colon, enterocolitis

erosio, ōnis f any superficial destructive process, erosion

erythropenia, ae f a state in which there are too few erythrocytes, erythropenia

evisceratio, ōnis f removal of the contents of an organ or part, evisceration

extractio, ōnis f the act or process of drawing out a part of body or foreign body, extraction

F

faciālis, e facial

facies, ēi f face

febris, is f fever

fetor, ōris m a foul odour or
stench, fetor

G

galactorrhoea, ae f an excessive
flow of milk, galactorrhoea

gaster, tris f stomach

gastrocēle, es f hernia of the
stomach or of a portion which
has become pouched, gastrocele

gastrorrhoea, ae f the secretion by
the stomach of an abnormally
large quantity of gastric juice or
of mucus, gastrorrhoea

gastrospasmus, i m an involuntary
contraction of the stomach
muscle, gastrospasm

gastrostōma, ātis n natural or
artificial gastric fistula,
gastrostoma

geriāter, tri m a specialist treating
diseases of the aged, geriatrician

glandŭla, ae f gland

gingivālis, e gingival

glossoplegia, ae f paralysis of the
tongue, glossoplegia

glycaemia, ae f a condition in
which the circulating blood
contains a quantity of sugar
above normal amounts,
glycaemia

granulōma, ātis n a tumour
composed of granulation tissue,
granuloma

gravīda, ae f a woman who is
pregnant, a gravida

gynaecolōgus, i m a specialist for
treatment genital diseases in
women, gynecologist

H

haemarthrōsis, sis f extravasation
of blood into a joint,
haemarthrosis

haematologia, ae f branch of
medicine studying blood and its
diseases, hematology

halitōsis, is f fetid or offensive
breath, halitosis

hemianopsia, ae f (= **hemianopia,**
ae f) loss of half the vision in
each eye, hemianopsia
(hemianopia)

hemicrania, ae f a periodic morbid condition with localized headaches, hemicrania

hemiplegia, ae f paralysis of one half of the body, hemiplegia

hepar, ātis n liver

herpes, ētis m inflammation of the skin or mucous membrane, with clusters of deep-seated vesicles, herpes

hidradenītis, itīdis f inflammation of the sweat glands, hidradenitis

histolýsis, is f spontaneous dissolution of living organic tissue, histolysis

hydromētra, ae f an accumulation of watery fluid in the cavity of the uterus, hydrometra

hyperaemia, ae f an excess of blood in any part of the body, hyperaemia

hyperkeratōsis, is f hypertrophy of the stratum corneum of the skin, hyperkeratosis

hyperthermia, ae f very high body temperature, hyperthermia

hypochylia, ae f a condition in

which the amount of gastric juice is lessened, hypochylia

hyposalivatio, ōnis f a condition in which there is abnormal decrease in the secretion of saliva, hyposalivation

hypotonia, ae f lessened tension in any body structure, hypotonia

I

iatrogēnus, a, um happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks, iatrogenic

implantatio, ōnis f the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body, implantation

implantātum, i n any piece of tissue for use as a graft, implant

indigestio, ōnis f any disturbance of the normal process of digestion, indigestion

infarctus, us m a wedge-shaped area of dead tissue, with or without haemorrhage, produced by the obstruction of an end artery, infarction

infectio, ōnis f the invasion of a pathogenic organism into the body and its subsequent multiplication, infection

inflammatio, ōnis f inflammation

insufficiētia, ae f the state of being inadequate to perform normal function, insufficiency

intestīnum, i n intestine

inversus, a, um inverse

iris, ĩdis f iris

K

keratotomia, ae f making an incision into the cornea, keratotomy

L

labiālis, e labial

laparogastrostomia, ae f the operation to create an artificial opening in the stomach, laparogastrostomy

laparoscopia, ae f the act or process of examining the peritoneal cavity and its contents by means of a laparoscope,

laparoscopy

larynx, yngis m larynx

latens, ntis hidden

leucocytōsis, is f an increase in the total number of leucocytes in the blood, leucocytōsis

ligamentum, i n ligament

lipuria, ae f the presence of an oily emulsion or fat in the urine, lipuria

lumbālis, e lumbal

lymphangiōma, ātis n a tumor formed of lymphatic tissue, lymphangioma

lymphostāsis, is f cessation of the flow of lymph, lymphostasis

M

maculōsus, a, um maculate, marked by maculae

mastogramma, ātis n result of breast X-ray examination, mastogram

megacōlon, i n a condition in which there is great dilatation of the large intestine, megacolon

melanoderma, ātis n a condition

in which there is an unusually large accumulation of melanin in the skin, melanoderma

melanōsis, is f an abnormal deposition of the black pigment (melanin) in the skin or other tissues, melanosis

mellītus, a, um (diabētes) mellitus (diabetes) characterized by a high level of blood sugar

menalgia, ae f painful menstruation, menalgia

meningiōma, ātis n a meningeal tumor, thought to arise from the arachnoidal villi, meningioma

mesenterīcus, a, um mesenteric

metamorphōsis, is f change of form or structure, metamorphosis

microgenia, ae f a condition in which the chin is of unusually small size, microgenia

micromyelia, ae f general reduction in size of the spinal cord, micromyelia

micronychia, ae f small nail or nails, micronychia

monodactylismus, i m a congenital

condition in which one finger or toe only is present on the hand or the foot, monodactylism

morbis, i m disease

myasthenia, ae f weakness of muscles from whatever cause, myasthenia

myelītis, itīdis f inflammation of bone marrow, myelitis

myocēle, es f hernia of a muscle, myocele

myoplegia, ae f paralysis of muscle or a condition in which is decreased muscular force, myoplegia

N

necropneumonia, ae f gangrene of the lung, necropneumonia

neonātus, a, um s newly born child

neoplasma, ātis n any new and morbid formation of tissue, neoplasm

nephrolithiāsis, is f a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis

nervus, i m nerve

neuralgia, ae f a painful affection of the nerves, due to functional disturbances or to neuritis, neuralgia

neuritis, itidis f inflammation of a nerve, neuritis

neuropathologus, i m a specialist treating diseases of nervous system, neuropathologist

O

occipitalis, e occipital

oculus, i m eye

odontolithus, i m calculus on the teeth, odontolith

odontogenesis, is f the origin and formative development of teeth, odontogenesis

oligocytaemia, ae f a condition in the blood in which there is cell deficiency, oligocytaemia

oligophrenia, ae f congenital lack of the mentality, oligophrenia

oncologus, i m a specialist treating tumors, oncologist

onychomycosis, is f infection of

nails caused by a fungus, onychomycosis

ophthalmoscopy, ae f

instrumental-visual examination of the eye, ophthalmoscopy

os, oris n mouth

osteitis, itidis f inflammation of bone due to infection or injury, osteitis

osteoma, atis n an innocent tumor of bone, osteoma

osteomalacia, ae f softening of the bones, osteomalacia

osteonecrosis, is f death of bony tissue, osteonecrosis

osteopathia, ae f disease of bones, osteopathia

osteoporosis, is f rarefaction of bone, osteoporosis

otorhinolaryngologia, ae f branch of medicine for treating diseases of ear, nose and larynx, otorhinolaryngology

P

pachydactylia, ae f abnormal thickening of a finger or toe,

pachydactyly

palatoplegia, ae f paralysis

affecting the soft palate,

palatoplegia

palpatio, ōnis f the method of physical examination in which the hands are applied to the surface of the body, so that by sense of touch information is obtained about the condition of inner organs, palpation

pantalgia, ae f pain affecting all parts of the body, pantalgia

partialis, e partiāl

percussio, ōnis f the art of striking the thoracic or abdominal wall in order to produce sound vibration from which the nature of the underlying structures can be assessed, percussion

perfōrans, ntis perforating

pes, pedis m leg

phlebocarcinōma, ātis n a malignant epithelial tumour affecting a vein, phlebocarcinōma

photophobia, ae f abnormal intolerance to light, photophobia

phrenīcus, a, um phrenic

phthisiāter, tri m a specialist treating tuberculosis, phthisiotherapist

physiologia, ae f science studying normal vital processes in human body, physiology

phytotherapia, ae f method of treatment by means of medical plants, phytotherapy

planus, a, um plane

pneumocentēsis, is f lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of a cavity, pneumocentesis

pneumoëmpyēma, ātis n the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space, pneumoëmpyema

poliomyelītis, itīdis f an acute inflammation of anterior horn cells of the spinal cord due to polioviruses, poliomyelitis

polymastia, ae f the state in which in human beings there are more than two distinct mammary glands, polymastia

polŷpus, i m a tumor with a stalk

arising from mucous membranes
or the body surface, polyp

polyuria, ae f increase in the
amount of the excreted urine,
polyuria

proctolōgus, i m a specialist
treating diseases of rectum,
proctologist

prognathia, ae f a condition in
which there is abnormal
projection of one or both jaws,
prognatism

prolapsus, us m the sinking down
or protrusion of a viscus or its
part, prolapse

prophylaxis, is f the art of
preventing disease, prophylaxis

pseudoarthrōsis, is f a false joint
formed between the fragments
of a fractured bone which have
failed to unite, pseudarthrosis

psychiatria, ae f branch of
medicine treating mental
diseases, psychiatry

psychōsis, is f any kind of mental
disorder, psychosis

puerperalis, e puerperal

punctio, ōnis f the operation of
piercing a viscus or a swelling
either to establish the nature of its
content or to empty it, puncture

pyelitis, itīdis f inflammation of
the pelvis of the kidney, pyelitis

pyogēnus, a, um forming or
producing pus, pyogenic

pyopneumothōrax, ācis m an
inflammatory condition
characterized by the presence of
purulent fluid and gas in a pleural
cavity, pyopneumothorax

pyosalpinx, ngis f inflammation of
the uterine tube which has
progressed to pus formation,
pyosalpinx

R

rectum, i n rectum

renālis, e renal

replantatio, ōnis f the plantation of
a removed part of the whole
again, replantation

resectio, ōnis f surgical removal of
a part, usually of some
magnitude, e. g. jaw, stomach,

colon etc., resection

rhinogramma, ātis n X-ray film of the nose, rhinogram

ruptūra, ae f the breaking or forcible disruption of continuity of the bone or an other structure, rupture

S

salpingectomy, ae f excision of a uterine tube, salpingectomy

salpingolysis, is f breaking-down of adhesions in a uterine tube, salpingolysis

sarcōma, ātis n a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma

sclerōma, ātis n an area of indurated tissue, particularly in the mucous membrane of the nose or larynx, scleroma

sectio, ōnis f the act of cutting, section

sectio cadavēris a post - mortem examination of dead body

senīlis, e senile

simplex, ĩcis simple

situs, us m position, site

sive or

somatologia, ae f branch of anthropology, studying structure of human body, somatology

spasmophilia, ae f a morbid state in which there is a tendency to convulsions and spasm, spasmophilia

spasmus, i m a sudden, powerful, involuntary contraction of muscle, spasm

sphygmogramma, ātis n a record of the arterial pulse waves, sphygmogram

splanchnosclerōsis, is f hardening of any viscus, splanchnosclerosis

splenomegalia, ae f enlargement of the spleen, splenomegalia

spondylitis, itīdis f inflammation of the spine, spondilitis

spondylodēsis, is f the operation of fusion of the spine, usually by a bone graft, spondylodesis

spongiōsus, a, um spongy (spongy), full of small holes, like a sponge

stenothōrax, ācis m a short,
narrow thorax or chest,
stenothorax

stomatomycōsis, is f any morbid
condition of the oral cavity
caused by a microscopial fungus,
stomatomycosis

stomatoscopia, ae f visual-
instrumental examination of the
oral cavity, stomatoscopy

syndrōmum, i n a distinct group of
signs which form a characteristic
clinical picture of the disease,
syndrome

T

tachycardia, ae f rapid action of
the heart, tachycardia

tenorrhaphia, ae f an operation for
the suturing of the divided ends
of a tendon, tenorrhaphy

tenotomia, ae f the cutting of a
tendon, tenotomy

thermālis, e thermal

thermotherapia, ae f the use of
heat in the treatment of disease,
thermotherapia

thoracocentēsis, is f a puncture of
the wall of the thorax with the
aim of any diagnostic,
thoracocentesis

thrombocytopoēsis, is f the
formation of blood platelets,
thrombocytopoiesis

thrombotīcus, a, um characterized
or caused by thrombosis,
thrombotic

thyroideus, a, um thyroid

thyr(e)otoxicōsis, is f any toxic
condition attributable to
hyperactivity of the thyroid
gland, thyrotoxicosis

toponeurōsis, is f localized
neurosis, a functional
derangement in any part of the
body, toponeurosis

toxicomania, ae f an insane desire
for poison, toxicomania

toxicōsis, is f the pathological
condition caused by the
adsorption of poison, toxicosis

transplantātum, i n a piece of
tissue to transfer from one site to
another, transplant

traumatīcus, a, um traumatic

typhlectasia, ae f dilatation of the
caecum, typhlectasia

U

ulcus, ěris n ulcer

unguis, is m nail

uraemia, ae f the condition which
is associated with the retention
of metabolic products in the
blood and disturbance of acid-
base ratio of the latter, uraemia

uranoschĭsis, is f cleft palate, a
congenital fissure in the midline
of the hard palate, uranoschisis

utĕrus, i m uterus

V

venōsus, a, um venous

verrūca, ae f wart

verus, a, um true

viscus, ěris n the internal organs of
the body which are closely related
to the great serous cavities:
pleural, pericardial or peritoneal

vitium, i n a defect or a vice

X

xanthopsia, ae f a disturbance of
color vision, when everything
appears yellow, xanthopsia

xanthōsis, is f yellowish discolor-
ation, especially of the skin,
xanthosis

xerophthalmia, ae f a morbid
condition of eyes characterized
by a shrunken appearance of the
conjunctiva, xerophthalmia
(=xeroma)

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

**an abnormally long colon of
normal diameter, dolichocolon**

dolichocōlon, i n

**abnormally rapid breathing,
tachypnoea** tachypnoë, ës f

**abnormal narrowing of the
mouth, stenostomy**

stenostomia, ae f

**abnormal narrowing of the
internal diameter of a vessel,
angiostenosis** angiostenōsis, is f

**abnormal quickness in eating,
tachyphagia** tachyphagia,ae f

**abnormal slowness and weakness
of the process of digestion,
hypopepsia** hypopepsia, ae f

**abnormal sluggishness of physical
movement , bradykinesis**
bradykinesia, ae f

**abnormal thickening of a finger
or toe, pachydactyly**
pachydactylia, ae f

**an accumulation of pus in the
pericardium,**

pyopericardium

pyopericardium, i n

**achylia, absence of acid and
pepsin from the gastric juice**
achylia, ae f

acquired acquisītus, a, um

the act or process of drawing

out a part of body or a foreign

body, extraction extractio, ōnis f

acute acūtus, a, um

**acute inflammation of the gray
matter of the brain,**

polioencephalitis

polioencephalītis, itīdis f

**adenoma of the eyelid, blepharo-
adenoma** blepharoadenōma, ātis
n

**adiponecrosis, necrosis affecting
the fatty tissue of the body**
adiponecrōsis, is f

**aerobe, a microorganism which
utilizes and assimilates atmo-
spheric oxygen** aërobion, i n

**aerobic, requiring gaseous oxygen
in order to live** aërobīcus, a,

um	anthropologist, a specialist
aglossia, the congenital condition	studying the man in the process of
of being without a tongue	his evolution anthropōlogus, i m
aglossia, ae f	aortic aortĭcus, a, um
alimentary alimentarius, a, um	apn(o)ea, the cessation in
allergic allergĭcus, a, um	breathing apnoë, ës f
amputation, the surgical removal	arthrocentesis, the surgical
of a limb or a portion of a limb	procedure of puncturing a
or of any other appendage	joint arthrocentēsis, is f
amputatio, ōnis f	arthralgia, any kind of pain
anaemia, changes in the red cells	affecting a joint arthralgia, ae f
resulting in a reduction in the	athria, not having hair atrichia,
total amount of blood anaemia,	ae f
ae f	atrophy, a condition of general
anaerobe, a microorganism which	malnutrition from whatever
is able to exist although	cause atrophia, ae f
deprived of free oxygen or air	atypical atypĭcus, a, um
anaërobion, i n	autolaryngoscopy, the
anaerobic, able to sustain life	examination of one's own
without free oxygen anaërobĭcus,	larynx with a laryngoscope
a, um	autolaryngoscopia, ae f
angiology, the science of the blood	autoplasty, the repair of a
vessels angiologia, ae f	diseased or injured tissue or
angioma, a tumor composed of	organ by material taken from
blood vessels or of lymphatic	another part of the body
vessels angiōma, ātis, n	autoplastĭca, ae f
	autopsy, post-mortem

examination of a body in order to establish the cause of death
autopsia, ae f

B

benign benignus, a, um

biopharmaceutics, study of physical and chemical properties of medicinal substances

biopharmaceutīca, ae f

biopsy, examination for purposes of diagnosis of tissue cut from the living body biopsia, ae f

blepharotomy, incision of an eyelid blepharotomia, ae f

brachyoesophagus, a congenitally short oesophagus
brachyoesophāgus, i m

bradycardia, slowing of the heart rate bradycardia, ae f

branch of clinical medicine treating rectum diseases,

proctology proctologia, ae f

branch of medicine treating diseases of children, paediatrics
paediatrica, ae f

breast mamma, ae f

bronchitis, an inflamed condition of the bronchi
bronchītis, itīdis f

burn combustio, ōnis f

C

calculosis, the condition in which a number of calculi are present in any part of the body
calculōsis, is f

calculus (plur. calculi), a solid pathological concretion calcūlus, i m

calculus on the teeth, odontolith
odontolīthus, i m

cancerogenic (= carcinogenic), producing carcinoma
cancerogēnus, a, um

carcinoma, a malignant epithelial tumor carcinōma, ātis n
a carcinoma the fragment of

which contains cartilaginous elements, chondroma
chondrōma, ātis n

a carcinomatous tumor of glandular epithelium and

connective tissue,
adenocarcinoma
 adenocarcinōma, ātis n
cardinal cardinālis, e
cardiogram 1) result of X-ray
 examination of the heart
 2) graphical picture of heart
 work cardiogramma, ātis n
cardiography 1) X-ray
 examination of the heart
 2) graphical recording of heart
 activity cardiographia, ae f
causing the growth of tumors,
oncogenous oncogēnus, a, um
cephalalgia, pain in the head
 cephalalgia, ae f
cerebral cerebrālis, e
cerebrospinal cerebrospinālis, e
changes in the red cells resulting
in a reduction in the total
amount of blood anaemia, ae f
chemical chemīcus, a, um
cholecystolithiasis, the condition
in which there are gall-stones
in the gall bladder or bile duct
 cholecystolithiāsis, is f

chondroporosis, a porous
condition of cartilage shown in
thinning of cartilage and
formation of spaces and
sinuses chondroporōsis, is f
chronic chronīcus, a, um
a chronic disease of the skin,
characterized by the
appearance of laminated
scales, psoriasis psoriāsis, is f
chyluria, the condition in which
the urine contains lymph
 chyluria, ae f
closed clausus, a, um
collapse, a state of extreme
weakness with physical and
mental depression collapsus,
 us m
colonorrhagia, haemorrhage from
the colon colonorrhagia, ae f
colpocystotomy, surgical incision
into the urinary bladder
through the wall of the vagina
 colpocystotomia, ae f
colpohysteropexy, the operative
fixation of the uterus through
the vagina colpohysteropexia,

- ae f
- colpomyomectomy, removal of a myoma from the uterus by the vaginal route** colpomyomec-tomia, ae f
- coma, the state of complete loss of consciousness from which the patient cannot be roused by any ordinary external stimulus** coma, ātis n
- composite** composĭtus, a, um
- a concussion or a violent shaking of a soft structure** commotio, ōnis f
- a condition characterized by the presence of gravel or of renal calculi, nephrolithiasis** nephrolithiāsĭs, is f
- a condition in which the ability to swallow is lacking, aphagia** aphagia
- a condition in which the amount of gastric juice is lessened, hypochylia** hypochylia, ae f
- a condition in which there are abnormally short fingers or toes, brachydactylia** brachydactylia, ae f
- a condition of enlargement of the liver, hepatomegalia** hepatomegalia, ae f
- congelation, frostbite, a local morbid condition caused by freezing** congelatio, ōnis f
- congenital cleft of a vertebral arch or several arches, spondyloschisis** spondyloschĭsis, is f
- congenital fissure of the urinary bladder, cystoschisis** cystoschĭsis, is f
- cryosurgery, surgical procedures in which tissue is destroyed by freezing** cryochirurgia, ae f
- cryptolith, a calculus contained in a crypt** cryptolĭthus, i m
- cryptopsoriasis, hidden, latent psoriasis** cryptopsoriāsĭs, is f
- cystitis, inflammation of the urinary bladder** cystĭtis, itĭdis f
- cytology, the science of the form and functions of cells** cytologia, ae f

D

dacryorrhoea, an excessive flow of

tears dacryorrhoea, ae f

deficiency deficientia, ae f

dermatitis, inflammation of the

skin dermatītis, itīdis f

desmalgia, pain in a ligament

desmalgia, ae f

desmotomy, incision of the

ligament desmotomia, ae f

diagnosis via examination of iris,

iridodiagnostics

iridodiagnostīca, ae f

didactylism, the congenital

condition of having only two

fingers on a hand or two toes

on a foot didactylismus, i m

diffuse diffūsus, a, um

dilatation of the stomach,

gastrectasia gastrectasia, ae f

direct directus, a, um

a discharge of pus, pyorrhoea

pyorrhoea, ae f

any disease affecting a joint,

arthropathy arthropathia, ae f

any diseased condition of the

viscera, splanchnopathy

splanchnopathia, ae f

any disease of skin, dermatosis

dermatosis, is f

a disturbance of color vision when

everything appears yellow,

xanthopsia xanthopsia, ae f

dislocation, abnormal

displacement of one bone upon

another in a joint dislocatio,

ōnis f

dolichocolon, an abnormally long

colon of normal diameter

dolichocōlon, i n

dropsy, the abnormal accumu-

lation of fluid in tissue or

cavity space hydrops, ōpis m

dysmenorrhoea, pain occurring in

the back and lower abdomen at

or about the time of the menses

dysmenorrhoea, ae f

dysplasia, abnormal development

of tissue dysplasia, ae f

dystonia, a state of disordered

tonicity dystonia, ae f

dystrophy, a disorder of the

structure and functions of an

organ or tissue due to perver-

ted nutrition dystrophia, ae f

E

ectopia, a morbid congenital malposition or traumatic displacement of an organ or part ectopia, ae f

eczema, a nocontagious inflammatory disease of the skin with much itching and burning eczēma, ātis n

embolaemia, a condition in which emboli are present in the blood embolaemia, ae f

embryectomy, the surgical removal of the embryo embryectomia, ae f

embryopathology, the branch of pathology concerned with defective or abnormal development of embryo embryopathologia, ae f

emphysema, a condition in which the alveoli of the lungs are dilated emphysēma, ātis n

encephalomalacia, softening of the brain encephalomalacia, ae f

encephalopathy, any morbid condition of the brain

encephalopathia, ae f

endogenous, having origin within the organism endogēnus, a, um

endometritis, an inflammation of the inner mucous membrane of the uterus endometrītis, itīdis f

enophthalmus, recession of the eyeball into the cavity of the orbit enophthalmus, i m

enteritis, inflammation of the mucous membrane of the intestines enterītis, itīdis f

enterogastritis, inflammation of the small intestine and the stomach enterogastrītis, itīdis f

enterolithiasis, the formation of calculi or concretions in the intestine entherolithiāsis, is f

enteromegalia, an unusually large size of the intestine enteromegalia, ae f

the entrance and establishment of parasites into the body of a host, invasion invasio, ōnis f

erythema, redness of the skin due to hyperaemia erythēma, ātis n

evisceration, a removal of the contents of an organ or part evisceratio, ōnis f

an excessive flow of milk, galactorroea galactorroea, ae f
excessive sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body, hyperaesthesia hyperaesthesia, ae f

exogenous, belonging to aetiological factors outside the organism exogēnus, a, um
eye oculus, i m

F

fetal fetālis, e

femur femur, ōris n

fever febris, is f

fibroma, an innocent tumor composed chiefly of connective tissue fibrōma, ātis n

fibrous fibrōsus, a, um

any fluid that has passed through the membrane of the skin,

transudate transsudātum, i n
the formation of concretions, lithiasis lithiāsis, is f
fracture, a break in the continuity of a bone fractūra, ae f
functional functionālis, e

G

galactostasis, arrest or stagnation in the secretion of milk galactostāsis, is f

gall bladder vesīca fellea (biliāris)

geminated geminātus, a, um

gerontology, science studying living processes in the aged gerontologia, ae f

gigantism, a condition of excessive tallness gigantismus, i m

glaucoma, a condition of increased intraocular pressure and its consequences glaucōma, ātis n

glossitis, inflammation of the tongue glossītis, itīdis f

gnathalgia, pain in one or both jaws gnathalgia, ae f

gnathoschisis, a congenital fissure

in the maxilla gnathoschĭsis, is
f

**goitre, an enlargement of the
thyroid gland** struma, ae f

H

**haematology, branch of medicine
studying blood and its diseases**
haematologia, ae f

**haematoma, a tumor or swelling
composed of blood**
haematōma, ātis n

**haematomyelia, bleeding within
the substance of the spinal
cord** haematomyelia, ae f

**haematosalpinx, collection and
retention of blood in a uterine
tube** haematosalpinx, ngis f

**haemogram, results of
quantitative and qualitative
examination of blood**
haemogramma, ātis n

**haemophilia, a severe hereditary
bleeding disease affecting
males and transmitted by
females** haemophilia, ae f

hand manus, us f

hardening of bony spaces,

osteosclerosis osteosclerōsis, is
f

headache dolor (ōris m) capĭtis

hemiatrophy, atrophy only

**affecting one half of the body,
or one half of an organ**

hemiatrophia, ae f

hepatic hepaticus, a, um

**hepatitis, inflammation of the
liver** hepatĭtis, itĭdis f

**hepatomegalia, a condition of
enlargement of the liver**

hepatomegalia, ae f

hereditary hereditarius, a, um

herniation of the uterus,

metrocele metrocēle, es f

**hidrosis 1) the process of secreting
sweat 2) abnormally profuse
sweating** hidrōsis, is f

**hydrarthrosis, a watery effusion
into the cavity of a joint**

hydrarthrōsis, is f

**hydrometra, an accumulation of
watery fluid in the cavity of
the uterus** hydromētra, ae f

hyperaesthesia, excessive

<p>sensitiveness of any organ or part of the body hyperaesthesia, ae f</p> <p>hyperglycaemia, an excessive amount of sugar in the blood hyperglycaemia, ae f</p> <p>hypersalivation, excessive secretion of saliva hypersalivatio, ōnis f</p> <p>hypertension, high arterial blood pressure hypertensio, ōnis f</p> <p>hypogalactia, the secretion of too small quantity of milk hypogalactia, ae f</p> <p>hypoglycaemic, relating or belonging to, or bringing about hypoglycaemia, a low blood sugar concentration hypoglycaemīcus, a, um</p> <p>hypomnesia, a weak or defective state of the memory hypomnesia, ae f</p> <p>hypophrenia, feebleness of mind hypophrenia, ae f</p> <p>hypoplasia, underdevelopment of a tissue or part hypoplasia, ae f</p>	<p>hypothermia, deficiency of body heat hypothermia, ae f</p> <p>I</p> <p>iatrogenic, happening because of the physician's manner or injudicious remarks, iatrogenic</p> <p>immune immūnus, a, um</p> <p>immunodeficiency immunodeficientia, ae f</p> <p>impairment of the voice, dysphonia dysphonia, ae f</p> <p>implant, any piece of tissue used as a graft implantātum, i n</p> <p>implantation, the introduction of one tissue or structure into another with the aim of improving the function of any part of the body implantatio, ōnis f</p> <p>incision of the abdominal wall and excision of the uterus, laparohysterectomy laparohysterectomy, ae f</p> <p>an increase in the total number of leucocytes, leucocytosis</p>
--	---

leucocytōsis, is f
infective infectīvus, a, um
inflammation of the cornea,
keratitis keratītis, itīdis f
~ **affecting the pelvis of the**
kidney and the urinary
bladder, pyelocystitis
pyelocystītis, itīdis f
~ **in the nail fold, panaris**
panaritium, i n
~ **of the abdominal muscles,**
laparomyositis laparomyosītis,
itīdis f
~ **of the inner mucous membrane**
of the uterus, endometritis
endometrītis, itīdis f
~ **of the liver, hepatitis** hepatītis,
itīdis f
~ **of the membranes of the brain**
or spinal cord, meningitis
meningitis, itīdis f
injury laesio ,ōnis f
intermittent, coming and going at
intervals intermittens, ntis
internal internus, a, um
intravenous intravenōsus, a, um
iridodiagnostics, diagnosis via

examination of iris
iridodiagnostīca, ae f

J

joint articulatio, ōnis f

K

keratomycosis, disease of cornea
caused by a fungus

keratomycōsis, is f

keratoplasty, plastic surgery of
the cornea keratoplastīca, ae f
any kind of pain affecting a joint,
arthralgia arthralgia, ae f

L

left sinister, tra, trum

lung pulmo, ōnis m

lymphangiitis, inflammation of
lymphatic vessels

lymphangiītis, itīdis f

lymphocytic lymphocytīcus, a, um
lymphocytosis, an increase in the
number of lymphocytes

lymphocytōsis, is f

M

macrocyte, a red blood cell that is larger than normal

macrocytus, i m

macronychia, excessive length or size of the nails macronychia, ae f

mammogram (= mastogram) result of breast X-ray examination mammogramma, ātis n

a malignant tumor of connective tissue or its derivatives, sarcoma sarcōma, ātis n

mastopathy, any diseased condition of the mammary gland mastopathia, ae f

measurement the size of pelvis in women, pelvimetry pelvimetria, ae f

a medical practitioner skilled in general surgery, who specializes in the operative treatment of diseases of the nervous system, neurosurgeon neurochirurgus, i m
medical spedialis treating

diseases of inner organs

therapeutista, ae m

megaloduodenum, duodenum of abnormally large size megaloduodēnum, i n

megalomania, a mental condition in which a person has grandiose delusions about himself and his own intellect, power, importance and so on megalomania, ae f

melanocarcinoma, a darkly pigmented malignant epithelial tumor melanocarcinōma, ātis n

a meningeal tumor thought to arise from the arachnoidal villi, meningioma meningiōma, ātis n

menalgia, painful menstruation menalgia, ae f

meningitis, inflammation of the membranes of the brain or spinal cord meningītis, itīdis f

meningoencephalitis, an inflammatory condition of the brain and its meninges meningoencephalītis, itīdis f

metastasis, the transfer of disease from its primary site to distant parts of the body by blood vessels, lymphatics or direct contiguity metastāsis, is f

micromastia, abnormal smallness of the mammary glands
micromastia, ae f

microsphgmy, diminished strength of pulse
microsphgmia, ae f

monocytogenesis, the production of monocytes in the bone marrow
monocytogenēsis, is f

monopathophobia, fear of a particular disease
monopathophobia, ae f

monostotic, pertaining to a single bone monostotīcus, a, um
any morbid condition affecting the lungs, pneumopathy
pneumopathia, ae f

any morbid condition of the nose, rhinopathy rhinopathia, ae f

any morbid condition or abnormal growth of the hair, trichopathy trichopathia, ae f

myelocytæmia, the presence of myelocytes in the blood
myelocytæmia, ae f

myopia, short sight myopia, ae f

N

narcosis, stupor produced by drugs and tending to insensibility and paralysis
narcōsis, is f

narrowing or stricture of the duct of the lacrimal gland, dacryostenosis dacryostenōsis, is f

necraemia, a condition in which the blood loses its vitality
necraemia, ae f

nearthrosis, an artificial joint implanted by the surgical operation nearthrōsis, is f
a neoplasm originating in embryonic elements or blighted ovum, embryoneoplasm embryoneoplasma, ātis n

nephrogenic, produced by or originating in a kidney

nephrogēnus, a um
**nephropathy, disease of the
kidney** nephropathia, ae f
**neurogenic, happening because of
the nervous system**
neurogēnus, a, um

O

**odontogenic, relating to the
development of the teeth**
odontogēnus, a, um
**odontome, a solid or cystic
tumour occurring in the jaws
which is derived from cells
conserved in tooth
development** odontōma, ātis n
**oedema, the presence of excessive
amounts of fluid in the
intercellular tissue spaces of
the body** oedēma, ātis n
**oesophagostenosis, narrowing of
the oesophagus**
oesophagostenōsis, is f
**oesophagostoma, any opening into
the oesophagus apart from the
normal entrance and exit**
oesophagostōma, ātis n

oesophagus oesophāgus, i m
**oligodactylia, a congenital
deficiency of fingers, or toes**
oligodactylia, ae f
**oncologist, a specialist treating
tumorous diseases** oncolōgus, i
m
**oncotherapy, the treatment of
tumours** oncotherapia, ae f
**onychodystrophy, malformation
of the nails due to impaired
nutrition** onychodystrophia, ae
f
open apertus, a, um
operation operatio, ōnis f
**the operation for the relief of
hernia and the resultant reduction
of the latter, herniotomia**
herniotomia, ae f
**the operation of removal of the
adenoid growth by excision,
adenotomy** adenotomia, ae f
**the operation of transference of a
tissue of an organ from one
place to an other with the aim
of improving or renewing a
function, transplantation**

transplantatio, ōnis f
**ophthalmoplegy, palsy (paralysis)
of the ocular muscles**
ophthalmoplegia, ae f
**ophthalmorrhexis, rupture of the
eyeball** ophthalmorrhexis, is f
**ophthalmoscopy, instrumental-
visual examination of the eye**
ophthalmoscopia, ae f
**the origin and development of
bone marrow, myelogenesis**
myelogenēsis, is f
**the origin and development of
morbid condition,
pathogenesis** pathogenēsis, is f
**the origin, formation and
development of body tissue,
histogenesis** histogenēsis, is f
**osteochondrosis, a degenerative
change in bony and cartilage
tissues** osteochondrōsis, is f
**osteodystrophy, a disorder of bone
nutrition** osteodystrophia, ae f
**osteomalacia, softening of the
bones** osteomalacia, ae f
osteoporosis, rarefaction of bone
osteoporōsis, is f

**otogenic, happening because of
the ear** otogēnus, a, um
**otolaryngologist, a specialist
treating ear and larynx
diseases** otolaryngolōgus, i m

P

**pachycheilia, abnormal thickness
or swelling of the lips**
pachycheilia, ae f
**panaris, inflammation in the nail
fold** panaritium, i n
**paralysis affecting the soft palate,
palatoplegia** palatoplegia, ae f
**paralysis, loss of motor strength
due to a functional or organic
disorder of neural or
neuromuscular mechanism**
paralýsis, is f
**paralysis of similar parts on both
sides of the body, diplegia**
diplegia, ae f
**paranephritis, an inflammatory
condition involving the
connective tissue adjacent to
the kidney** paranephritīs, itīdis
f

partial partiālis, e

a pathological condition in which one muscle, one group of muscles or one part of the body is only affected, monoplegia
monoplegia, ae f

a pathological condition involving many joints, polyarthropathy
polyarthropathia, ae f

pathological softening of cartilage, chondromalacia
chondromalacia, ae f

pediatrician, a specialist treating children's diseases paediāter, tri m

peduncle peduncūlus, i m

pelvic pelvīcus, a, um

pericystitis, inflammation in which the structures around the urinary bladder are affected pericystītis, itīdis f

a person with an unusually small size of head, microcephalus
microcephālus, i m

pharmacophobia, morbid fear of taking drugs or medicines
pharmacophobia, ae f

pharmacotherapy, science

studying drugs and their usage in treating diseases

pharmacotherapia, ae f

phlebography 1) radiographic visualization of veins 2) the tracing of the venous pulse by means of a phlebograph
phlebographia, ae f

phoniatics (= phoniatriy), the treatment of disorders of speech phoniatria, ae f

phonocardiogram, the record produced by an instrument for recording heart sounds
phonocardiogramma, ātis n

photophobia, abnormal intolerance to light
photophobia, ae f

phthisiologist, a specialist treating tuberculosis phthisiāter, tri m

phytotherapy, method of treatment by means of medical plants phytotherapia, ae f

plasma, the fluid portion of the blood in which the blood corpuscles are suspended

plasma, ātis n
any plastic operation for repair or reconstruction of the urinary bladder, cystoplasty
cystoplastīca, ae f
any plastic surgical operation on the vagina, colpoplasty
colpoplastīca, ae f
pneumocentesis, lung puncture in order to aspirate the contents of the cavity pneumocentēsis, is f
pneumoempyema, the presence of pus and gas within the pleural space pneumoempyēma, ātis n
pneumohaemothorax, an accumulation of gas, air and blood in the cavity of the thorax pneumohaemothōrax, ācis m
pneumonia, inflammation of the spongy tissue of the lung
pneumonia, ae f
pneumorrhaphy, the operation of suturing a wound of the lung
pneumorrhaphia, ae f
pneumotomy, the making of an

incision into the lung
pneumotomia, ae f
podagra, gout, a disease of the purine metabolism characterized by attacks of arthritis with an associated raised serum uric acid
podāgra, ae f
podalgia, sensation of pain in the foot podalgia, ae f
polioencephalopathy, any pathological condition of the gray matter of the brain
polioencephalopathia, ae f
polyavitaminosis, a morbid condition caused by deficiency of several vitamins
polyavitaminōsis, is f
polyposis, a condition in which the colon is studded with polypi growing from the mucous membrane polypōsis, is f
polypus of the vagina, colpo-polypus colpopolŷpus, i m
postoperative postoperatīvus, a, um

primary primarius, a, um
proctodiagnostics, examination of the functional state of the rectum proctodiagnostīca, ae f
proctoscopy, instrumental-visual examination of the rectum proctoscopia, ae f
proctospasm, spasmatic contraction of the rectum proctospasmus, i m
profuse discharge of mucous fluid from the nose, rhinorrhoea rhinorrhoea, ae f
prolapse, the sinking down or protrusion of a viscus or its part prolapsus, us m
psychiatrist, specialist treating mental diseases psychiāter, tri m
psychogenic, developing or originating of mental causes psychogēnus, a, um
psychologist, specialist studying mental activities of a human personality psycholōgus, i m
puncture of the cornea, keratocentesis keratocentēsis, is f

puncture, the operation of piercing a viscus or a swelling either to establish the nature of its content or to empty it punctūra, ae f; punctio, ōnis f
pyuria, a condition in which pus is present in the urine pyuria, ae f

R

a red blood cell that is larger than normal, macrocyte macrocýtus, i m
removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part, amputation amputatio, ōnis f
removal of an entire pathological structure, organ or part, extirpation extirpatio, ōnis f
replantation, the plantation of a removed part of the whole to its site again replantatio, ōnis f
resection, surgical removal of a part, usually of some magnitude, e.g. jaw, stomach, colon etc. resectio, ōnis f
results of quantitative and qualitative examination of

blood, hemogram
haemogramma, ātis n

retention of the menstrual flow
due to congenital or acquired
genital canal stenosis,
cryptomenorrhoea
cryptomenorrhoea, ae f

retina retina, ae f

rhinolith, a concretion in the
cavity of the nose rhinolīthus, i
m

rhinopathy, any morbid condition
of the nose rhinopathia, ae f

rhinoscopy, instrumental-visual
examination of the nose
rhinoscopia, ae f

rib costa, ae f

right dexter, tra, trum

S

salpingogram, the radiograph
made during the radiographic
visualization of the uterus and
uterine tubes salpingogram-
ma, ātis n

salpingopexy, surgical fixation of
the uterine tube salpingopexia, ae
f

sarcomatosis, the condition in
which a number of sarcomata
develops here and there on the
body sarcomatōsis, is f

science studying drugs and their
usage, pharmacotherapy
pharmacotherapia, ae f

scientist studying normal vital
processes in human organism
physiologist physiolōgus, i m

sclerodermatitis, inflammation
and induration of the skin
sclerodermatītis, itīdis f

secondary secundarius, a, um

senile senīlis, e

separation of a tissue as a result
of its death, necrolysis
necrolýsis, is f

sialolith, a salivary calculus
sialolīthus, i m

simple simplex, ĭcis

somatology, branch of
anthropology studying
structure of human body

somatologia, ae f

spasm of the caecum, typhlo-
spasm typhlospasmus, i m

specialist studying forms of life
and vital organisms, biologist
 biolōgus, i m

specialist studying the man in
process of his evolution,
anthropologist
 anthropolōgus, i m

medical specialist treating
 ~ ~ ~ **blood diseases, hematologist**
 haematolōgus, i m

~ ~ ~ **children's diseases,**
pediatrician paediāter, tri m

~ ~ ~ **ear and larynx diseases,**
otolaryngologist
 otolaryngolōgus, i m

~ ~ ~ **inner organs, therapist**
 therapeutista, ae m

~ ~ ~ **mental diseases, psychiatrist**
 psychiāter, tri m

~ ~ ~ **tumorous diseases, oncologist**
 oncolōgus, i m

~ ~ ~ **tuberculosis, phthisiologist**
 phthisiāter, tri m

splenic splenīcus, a, um

splenohepatomegaly, enlargement
of the spleen splenohepato-
 megalia ae f

spondylopathy, any disease of the
vertebrae spondylopathia, ae f

spongiform, having resemblance
to a sponge spongiformis, e

a state in which most of the teeth
are lacking, oligodentia
 oligodentia, ae f

a state in which there are too few
erythrocytes, erythropenia
 erythropenia, ae f

stenosis, narrowing or stricture of
an orifice or of the lumen of a
hollow or tubular organ
 stenōsis, is f

stomach gaster, tris f

stomatology, branch of clinical
medicine treating diseases of
the oral cavity stomatologia, ae
 f

stomatītis, inflammation of the
oral cavity stomatītis, itīdis f

subacute, (disease) running a
moderately rapid and severe
course for which the word

acute would not be appropriate
 subacūtus, a, um

subcutaneous subcutaneus a, um

a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli, thromboembolism
 thromboëmbolismus, i m

superficial superficiālis, e

suppurative, pus-forming
 suppuratīvus, a, um

surgical operation on the small structures with the aid of a microscope, microsurgery
 microchirurgia, ae f

symblepharon, adhesion of the eyelid to the eyeball
 symblephāron, i n

symptom, the consciousness of a disturbance in a bodily function symptōma, ātis n

syndrome, a distinct group of signs which form a characteristic clinical picture of the disease syndrōmum, i n

synphalangism, a condition in which the joints of certain fingers or toes are fused

synphalangismus, i m

T

tachyphagia, abnormal quickness in eating, tachyphagia
 tachyphagia, ae f

tendon tendo, ĩnis m

tenodesis, operative fixation of a tendon tenodësis, is f

the presence of air or gas within a thorax, pneumothorax
 pneumothōrax, ācis m

the presence of blood in the tympanic cavity, haemotympanum
 haemotympānum, i n

the presence of blood in the urine, haematuria haematuria, ae f

the production and evolution of form, morphogenesis
 morphogenësis, is f

the production of urinary calculi and the morbid state due to the presence of calculi in the urinary system, urolithiasis
 urolithiāsis, is f

the rash or eruption on the

- mucous tissue, enanthema**
 enanthēma, ātis n
- the surgical establishment of a permanent or semipermanent opening into the urinary bladder, cystostomy**
 cystostomia, se f
- therapist, specialist for treating diseases of inner organs** therapeutista, ae m
- thoracometry, measurement of the size of the thorax**
 thoracometria, ae f
- thromboembolism, a sudden blocking of a blood vessel, usually an artery, by the emboli** thromboēmbolismus, i m
- tenolysis, the freeing of a tendon from adhesions** tenolŷsis, is f
- thrombosis, intravascular coagulation during life producing a thrombus** thrombōsis, is f
- tissue** textus, us m
- tomography, body-section radiography** tomographia, ae f
- tonsillitis, inflammation of the tonsil** tonsillītis, itīdis f
- tonsillotomy, the surgical operation for removal of a part of a tonsil** tonsillotomia, ae f
- topography, the anatomical description of any particular part of the body** topographia, ae f
- topophobia, unreasoning fear of certain places** topophobia, ae f
- total or partial surgical removal of diseased lung tissue, pneumonectomy**
 pneumonectomia, ae f
- toxicosis, the pathological condition caused by the absorption of poisons**
 toxicōsis, is f
- transfusion, the introduction of sterile fluids such as blood, plasma, serum and other solutions into the blood vessels of the circulatory system**
 transfusio, ōnis f
- transplantation, the operation of transference of a tissue or an organ from one place to an**

**other with the aim of
improving or renewing the
function** transplantatio,ōnis f
traumatic traumaticus, a, um
**treatment by means of medical
plants, phytotherapy**
phytoterapia, ae f
**treatment by means of natural or
artificial physical factors,
physiotherapy** physiotherapia,
ae f
tuberculosis tuberculōsis, is f
**a tumor consisting of connective
tissue element, desmoneoplasm**
desmoneoplasma, ātis n
**typhlocele, a hernia involving the
caecum** typhlocēle, es f

U

**ulceration, the process of
formation of an ulcer** ulceratio,
ōnis f
ultrasonic, ultrasound
ultrasonarius, a, um
**urethritis, inflammation of the
urethra** urethrītis, itīdis f
use of cold or freezing as a

**therapeutic measure,
cryotherapy** cryotherapia, ae f

V

viral virālis, e

X

**xerostomia, dryness of the mouth
due to failure of the salivary
gland** xerostomia, ae f
**the X-ray examination of the
great vessels and the chambers
of the heart, angiocardiology**
angiocardio-graphia, ae f
**the X-ray examination of breast,
mammography** mammographia, ae
f

W

**a watery effusion into the cavity
of a joint, hydrarthrosis**
hydrarthrōsis, is f
wound vulnus, ěri

THE INTERNATIONAL STUDENTS' ANTHEM "GAUDEAMUS"

**Gaudeāmus igītur,
Juvēnes dum sumus!
Post jucundam juventūtem,
Post molestam senectūtem
Nos habēbit humus. (bis)**

Let us rejoice therefore
While we are young!
After a pleasant youth,
After a troubling old age
The earth will have us.

Ubi sunt qui ante nos
In mundo fuēre?
Transeas ad supēros,
Transeas ad infēros,
Hos si vis vidēre. (bis)

Where are they who before us
Were in the world?
You may go up to the gods,
You may cross into the underworld,
If you wish to see them.

Vita nostra brevis est,
Brevi finiētur:
Venit mors velocīter,
Rapit nos atrocīter,
Nemīni parcētur. (bis)

Our life is brief,
It will shortly end:
Death comes quickly,
Snatches us cruelly,
It spares no one.

**Vivat Academia!
Vivant professōres!
Vivat membrum quodlibet,
Vivant membra quaelibet,
Semper sint in fllore! (bis)**

Long live the academy!
Long live the teachers!
Long live each student!
Long live all students!
May they always flourish!

**Vivant omnes virgīnes,
Gracīles, formōsae!
Vivant et muliēres,
Tenēre, amabīles,
Bonae, laboriōsae. (bis)**

Long live all girls,
Slender and beautiful!
Long live wives as well,
Tender, loveable,
Good and productive.

**Vivat et Respublīca
Et qui illam regunt!
Vivat nostra civitas,
Maecenātum caritas,
Qui nos hic protēgunt! (bis)**

Long live the state as well
As they who rule it!
Long live our city
[And] the charity of benefactors
Who protect us here!

Pereat tristitia,
Pereant dolōres!
Pereat diabōlus,
Quivis antiburschius

Let sadness perish,
Let sorrows perish!
Let the devil perish,
Let [perish] whoever who is anti-student

The most popular stanzas nowadays are typed in black type

LATIN PROVERBS AND QUOTATIONS

- | | | |
|-----|---|---|
| 1. | Aes debitōrem leve, grave
inimīcum facit | <i>If you want to keep a friend, never
borrow, never lend</i> |
| 2. | Amīcus certus in re incerta
cernitur | <i>A friend in need is a friend
indeed</i> |
| 3. | Amor non est medicabilis herbis | <i>No herb will cure love</i> |
| 4. | Amor tussisque non celantur | <i>Love and cough cannot be hidden</i> |
| 5. | Aquīla muscas non captat | <i>An eagle doesn't catch the flies</i> |
| 6. | Arte et humanitāte, labōre et
scientia | <i>By art and humanity, by labor and
knowledge</i> |
| 7. | Audiātur et altēra pars | <i>Let's hear the opposite side!</i> |
| 8. | Aurōra Musis amīca | <i>He that will thrive, must rise at
five</i> |
| 9. | Bis dat qui cito dat | <i>He gives twice who gives in a
trice</i> |
| 10. | Bona valetūdo melior est quam
maxīmae divitiae | <i>Good health is above wealth</i> |

11.	Cogitatiōnes posteriōres saepe sunt meliōres	<i>Second thoughts are the best</i>
12.	Cogito ergo sum	<i>I think, therefore I am</i>
13.	Consuetūdo est altĕra natūra	<i>Custom is second nature</i>
14.	Copia non est inopia	<i>Store is no sore</i>
15.	Cum promisĕras, facias	<i>Promise is a debt</i>
16.	De gustĭbus non est disputandum	<i>Tastes are not to be argued</i>
17.	De mortuis aut bene aut nihil	<i>Speak nothing but good of the dead</i>
18.	Diabŏlus non est tam ater, ac pingĭtur	<i>The devil is not so black as he is painted</i>
19.	Dictum – factum	<i>Said and done</i>
20.	Dies levat lucrum	<i>Time heals most sorrows</i>
21.	Divĭde et impĕra	<i>Divide and rule</i>
22.	Domus propria domus optĭma	<i>My house is my castle</i> <i>(East or west, home is best)</i>
23.	Dum spiro spero	<i>As long as I breathe, I hope</i>
24.	Duos qui lepŏres sequĭtur, neutrum capit	<i>If you run after two hares, you will catch neither</i>
25.	Dura lex sed lex	<i>The law is the law and must be obeyed</i>
26.	Experientia est optĭma magistra (=Usus est optĭmus magister)	<i>Experience is the best teacher</i>
27.	Ebriĕtas est voluntaria insania	<i>Drunkenness is nothing but voluntary madness</i>
28.	E cantu dignoscĭtur avis	<i>A bird may be known by its song</i>
29.	Equi donāti dentes non sunt inspiciendi	<i>Don't look a gift horse in the mouth</i>
30.	Errāre humānum est	<i>It's human to err</i>
31.	Est avis in dextra melior guam quattuor extra	<i>A bird in the hand is worth one hundred in flight</i>
32.	Facĭle dictu, difficĭle factu	<i>Easier said than done</i>
33.	Facta, non verba	<i>Better to do well than to say well</i>
34.	Festĭna lente	<i>Make haste slowly</i>
35.	Finis corŏnat opus	<i>All is well that ends well</i>
36.	Fronti nulla fides	<i>Appearances are deceitful</i>
37.	Fortes fortūna adjūvat	<i>Fortune favours the brave</i>
38.	Homĭnes amplius oculis credunt	<i>A picture is worth a thousand</i>

	quam auribus	words
39.	Homo a se ortus	<i>A self – made man</i>
40.	Homo doctus in se divitias	<i>The wealth of the mind is the only</i>
	habet	<i>true wealth</i>
41.	Homo est animal sociāle	<i>Man is by nature a political animal</i>
42.	Homo homīni lupus est	<i>Man is a wolf to man</i>
43.	Homo propōnit, sed Deus	<i>Man proposes but God disposes</i>
	dispōnit	
44.	Homo sum, humāni nihil a me	<i>I am a man, I count nothing</i>
	alienum esse puto	<i>human alien to me</i>
45.	Ignorantia non est argumentum	<i>Lack of knowledge is no excuse</i>
		<i>(= Ignorance is no argument)</i>
46.	In medio stat virtus	<i>Virtue stands in the middle</i>
47.	Ira furor brevis est	<i>Anger is short madness</i>
48.	Labor et patientia omnia vincunt	<i>Diligence is the mother of success</i>
49.	Mala herba cito crescit	<i>Great weeds grow apace</i>
50.	Manus manum lavat	<i>One hand washes the other</i>
51.	Mare verbōrum, gutta rerum	<i>Great boast, small roast</i>
52.	Medīcus curat, natūra sanat	<i>The physician heals, nature</i>
		<i>convalesces</i>
53.	Mens sana in corpore sano	<i>A healthy mind in a healthy body</i>
54.	Nemo sine vitio est	<i>No one is without a fault</i>
55.	Ne differas in crastinum	<i>Never put off till tomorrow what</i>
		<i>you can do today</i>
56.	Ne noceas, si juvare non potes	<i>Do no harm, if you can not help</i>
57.	Nomen est omen	<i>The name is the sign</i>
58.	Ne Juppiter quidem omnibus	<i>He who pleased everybody died</i>
	placet	<i>before he was born</i>
59.	Nihil volenti difficile est	<i>Anything is possible if you wish</i>
		<i>hard enough</i>
60.	Non est fumus absque igne	<i>There is no smoke without fire</i>
61.	Non est via in medicīna sine	<i>There is no way in medicine</i>
	lingua Latīna	<i>without Latin</i>
62.	Non scholae, sed vitae	<i>We learn not for school but for life</i>
	discimus	
63.	Nulla aetas ad discendum sera	<i>It is never too late to learn</i>
64.	Nulla regūla sine exceptione	<i>There is no rule without exception</i>
65.	Nulla dies sine linea	<i>Not a day without a line</i>
66.	Nullum malum sine aliquo bono	<i>No great loss without some small</i>

67.	Omnia fluunt, omnia mutantur	<i>gain</i> <i>Everything flows and everything</i>
		<i>changes</i>
68.	Omnia mea mecum porto	<i>All I have, I carry with me</i>
69.	O tempōra, o mores!	<i>What times! What customs!</i>
70.	Otium post negotium	<i>Work done, have your fun</i>
71.	Pacta sunt servanda	<i>Agreements should be obeyed</i>
72.	Paulātim summa petūntur	<i>Learn to creep before you leap</i>
73.	Per aspēra ad astra	<i>Through the thorns (hard-ships) to</i>
		<i>the stars!</i>
74.	Pigritia est mater vitiōrum	<i>Idleness is the mother of all evil</i>
75.	Plenus venter non studet	<i>A full stomach is deaf to learning</i>
	<i>libenter</i>	
76.	Potius sero quam nunquam	<i>Better is late than never</i>
77.	Primum noli nocēre	<i>First, do no harm</i>
78.	Principium dimidium totius	<i>Well begun is half done</i>
79.	Procul ex oculis – procul ex	<i>Out of sight, out of mind</i>
	<i>mente</i>	
80.	Quem Deus perdēre vult,	<i>Whom God wishes to ruin, he first</i>
	<i>dementat prius</i>	<i>deprives him of reason</i>
81.	Quidquid latet apparēbit	<i>What is done by night appears by</i>
		<i>day</i>
82.	Quidquid Latīne dictum sit,	<i>Anything said in Latin sounds</i>
	<i>altum vidētur</i>	<i>profound</i>
83.	Qui non est nobiscum adversus	<i>He that is not with us is against us</i>
	<i>nos est</i>	
84.	Qui quaerit, repērit	<i>He will find who is searching</i>
85.	Qui scribit, bis legit	<i>He who writes reads twice</i>
86.	Qui seminat mala, metet mala	<i>The ill you do will rebound upon you</i>
87.	Qui tacet consentire vidētur	<i>Silence gives consent</i>
88.	Quod erat demonstrandum	<i>Which was to be proved</i>
89.	Quod licet Jovi, non licet bovi	<i>What Jupiter is allowed to do cattle</i>
		<i>are not</i>
90.	Quot capīta, tot sententiae	<i>So many men, so many minds</i>
91.	Radīces litterārum amārae,	<i>Whatever is good to know is</i>
	<i>fructus dulces</i>	<i>difficult to learn</i>
92.	Repetitio est mater studiōrum	<i>Repeating is the mother of learning</i>
93.	Saltāre ad tibiam alicūjus	<i>To dance after somebody's tune</i>
94.	Scientia potentia est	<i>Knowledge is power</i>

95.	Scio me nihil scire	<i>I know that I know nothing</i>
96.	Sero venientibus ossa	<i>There is nothing left for the late-</i> <i>comers</i>
97.	Sine ira et studio	<i>Without ill-will and without favor</i>
98.	Sine labore non erit panis in ore	<i>No pains, no gains</i>
99.	Si vis amari, ama!	<i>To be loved, love!</i>
100.	Suae quisque fortunae faber est	<i>Each man is the maker of his own</i> <i>fortune</i>
101.	Sudore et sanguine, opera et studio	<i>By blood, toil, tears and sweat</i>
102.	Suis quaeque temporibus	<i>There is a time and place for</i> <i>everything</i>
103.	Suum cuique	<i>To each his own</i>
104.	Tamdiu discendum est, quamdiu discendum vivis	<i>Live and learn</i>
105.	Tantum possumus, quantum scimus	<i>We can do as much as we know</i>
106.	Temperantia est custos vitae	<i>Excesses destroy our powers</i>
107.	Tempora mutantur et nos mutamur in illis	<i>The times change and we are</i> <i>changing with them</i>
108.	Temporis filia veritas	<i>Truth is a daughter of time</i>
109.	Totus mundus agit histriōnem	<i>All the world's a stage</i>
110.	Ubi concordia ibi victoria	<i>Where is the unity, there is the</i> <i>victory</i>
111.	Umbram suam timere	<i>He is afraid of his own shadow</i>
112.	Una hirundo non facit ver	<i>One swallow makes no summer</i>
113.	Ut salutās, ita salutabēris	<i>As the call, so the echo</i>
114.	Verba docent, exempla trahunt	<i>Words are teaching, examples are</i> <i>pulling</i>
115.	Verum amicum pecunia non parābis	<i>Money cannot buy friendship</i>
116.	Vincuntur molli pectora dura prece	<i>A word warmly said gives comfort</i> <i>even to a cat</i>
117.	Vox populi – vox Dei	<i>The voice of the people is the</i> <i>God's voice</i>

MEDICAL PROFESSIONAL EXPRESSIONS

- | | | |
|------|---------------------------|--|
| 1. | Abactus venter | <i>Artificially induced abortion</i> |
| 2. | Abalienatio mentis | <i>Insanity; mental derangement</i> |
| 3. | Ad aurem (ad aur.) | <i>At the ear</i> |
| 4. | Ad libitum (ad lib.) | <i>At pleasure, freely</i> |
| 5. | Ad usum externum | <i>To be taken externally (internally); for external</i> |
| 6. | (internum) | <i>(internal) use</i> |
| 7. | Alienatio partis | <i>Gangrene</i> |
| 8. | Alternis diebus (alt. d.) | <i>Every other day</i> |
| 9. | Alternis horis (a. h.) | <i>Every other hour</i> |
| 10. | Ante meridiem (a. m.) | <i>Morning, before noon</i> |
| 11. | Ante mortem | <i>Before death</i> |
| 112. | Ante partum | <i>Before childbirth</i> |
| 113. | Ante prandium (a. p.) | <i>Before dinner</i> |
| 114. | Auris dextra (a. d.) | <i>Right ear</i> |
| 115. | Auris laevis (sinistra) | <i>Left ear</i> |
| | (a. l., a. s.) | |
| 16. | Aures utrae | <i>Both ears</i> |
| 17. | Bipara | <i>A woman who has had born two children at</i> |
| | | <i>separate births</i> |
| 18. | Bis in die (b. i. d.) | <i>Twice a day</i> |
| 19. | Compos mentis | <i>Of sound mind</i> |
| 20. | Dolores vagi | <i>Wandering pains</i> |
| 21. | Facies hippocratica | <i>The appearance of a dying person</i> |
| | | <i>described by Hippocrates: a pale or livid</i> |
| | | <i>face with dull sunken eyes, pinched</i> |
| | | <i>nose, hollow cheeks and temples, open</i> |
| | | <i>mouth and dropped lower jaw</i> |
| 22. | Habitus aegroti | <i>The general physical appearance</i> |
| | | <i>of a diseased person; habit</i> |

23.	Horrida cutis (= cutis anserina)	<i>Goose flesh</i>
24.	Impotentia coeundi	<i>Sexual impotence in the male</i>
25.	Impotentia erigendi	<i>Sexual impotence due to lack of the power of erection of the penis</i>
26.	Impotentia generandi	<i>Inability to reproduce</i>
27.	In articulo mortis	<i>At the instant of death</i>
28.	In extrēmis	<i>At the point of death</i>
29.	In situ	<i>1. In the normal, natural or original position 2. In a given place</i>
30.	Inter alia	<i>Among the other</i>
31.	In utero	<i>Within the uterus</i>
32.	In vacuo	<i>In a vacuum</i>
33.	In vitro	<i>Within a glass vessel; applied to changes taking place in the test - tube method of investigation</i>
34.	In vivo	<i>Within the living organism</i>
35.	Intra vitam	<i>During life</i>
36.	Locum tenens	<i>A medical practitioner who acts as deputy for another</i>
37.	Locus minoris resistentiae	<i>The place of least resistance (an organ or tissue most likely to be a particular disease)</i>
38.	Lusus naturae	<i>A teratism or other freak of nature</i>
39.	Malum aegypticum	<i>Diphtheria (literally – Egyptian evil)</i>
40.	Malum arteriarum senile	<i>Senile arteriosclerosis (literally – senile evil of arteries)</i>
41.	Malum caducum	<i>Epilepsy (literally – falling evil)</i>
42.	Malum venereum	<i>Syphilis (literally – venereal evil)</i>
43.	Minimum audibile	<i>The auditory threshold; the least sound that can be heard</i>
44.	Minimum cognoscibile	<i>The visibility threshold for recognizing shapes</i>
45.	Minimum sensibile	<i>The threshold of consciousness</i>
46.	Muscae volitantes	<i>The appearance in the fields of vision of variously shaped figures caused by defect of the vitreous humor (literally – flying flies)</i>

47. Noli - me - tangere	<i>An old but colorful name for rodent ulcer (literally – do not touch me)</i>
48. Non compos mentis	<i>A person who is not sufficiently sound of mind to manage his own affairs</i>
49. Nostrum	<i>A quack remedy or a medicine the ingredients of which are kept secret</i>
50. Nullipăra	<i>A woman who has not given birth to a child</i>
51. Oculus dexter	<i>Right eye</i>
(OD, o. d.)	
52. Omnibus alternis horis	<i>Every other hour</i>
(o. alt. hor.)	
53. Omni mane (o. m.)	<i>Every morning</i>
54. Omni nocte (o. n.)	<i>Every night</i>
55. Per rectum (p. r.)	<i>Per rectum (through the rectum)</i>
56. Post meridiem (p. m.)	<i>Evening or afternoon</i>
57. Post mortem	<i>After death</i>
58. Post partum	<i>After childbirth</i>
59. Post prandium	<i>After dinner</i>
60. Potentia coeundi	<i>The capacity to have sexual intercourse</i>
61. Potentia concipiendi	<i>The capacity to conceive</i>
62. Potentia generandi	<i>The power to beget children</i>
63. Primigravida	<i>One who is pregnant for the first time</i>
64. Primipăra	<i>A woman who has had one child</i>
65. Prognosis anceps	<i>An uncertain prognosis</i>
66. Prognosis fausta	<i>A good prognosis</i>
67. Prognosis infausta	<i>An unfavorable prognosis</i>
68. Prognosis quoad vitam	<i>An opinion as to whether the patient will live</i>
69. Pro ratione aetatis	<i>According to age</i>
(p. r. aet.)	
70. Pro re nata (p. r. n.)	<i>Occasionally, when required</i>
71. Pubertas plena	<i>The attainment of full sexual maturity</i>
72. Pubertas praecox	<i>Puberty occurring at an abnormally early age</i>
73. Quantum libet (=quantum placet)	<i>As much as you please</i>
74. Quaque hora (q. q. h.)	<i>Every hour</i>
75. Quater in die (q. i. d.)	<i>Four times a day</i>
76. Secundigravida	<i>A woman who is pregnant for the second time</i>
77. Secundipăra	<i>A woman who has had 2 children, in two different pregnancies</i>
78. Status asthmaticus	<i>A severe and continuous attack of asthma in</i>

- which there is marked dispnoea
and finally exhaustion and collaps*
79. Status convulsivus sive epilepticus *Repeated and prolonged epileptic seizures
without recovery of consciousness
between attacks*
80. Status praesens *The present condition*
81. Ter de die (t. d. d.) *Thrice a day*
82. Unipāra *A woman who has given birth once only*
83. Vis conservātrix *The innate strength of an organism enabling
it to withstand disease*
84. Vis medicātrix natūrae *The natural ability of the organism to prevail
over disease without external assistance*
85. Vis vitae (vitālis) *The life force*

LITERATURE

Англо-русский медицинский словарь: Более 90 000 терминов / [Сост. И. Ю. Марковина, Е. В. Бабченко, З. К. Максимова и др.]. – М.: ООО «Медицинское информационное агентство», 2008. – 896 с.

Волмянская О.А. Англо-русский словарь для специалистов-медиков / О. А. Волмянская – Минск.: «Асар», 2000. – 304 с.

Международная анатомическая номенклатура (с официальным списком русских эквивалентов) / Под ред. Л. Л. Колесникова. М.: Медицина, 2003. – 424 с.

Русско-англо-латинский словарь крылатых слов и выражений / сост. А. С. Альбов. – М.: АСТ; СПб.: Сова, 2006 – 606, [2] с.

Цисык А. З. Латинский язык = The Latin Language : учеб.-метод. пособие А. З. Цисык. – 2-е изд. – Минск: БГМУ, 2015. – 212 с.

Цисык А. З. Латинский язык (Lingua Latina): учебник / А. З. Цисык. – Минск: Новое знание, 2018. – 456 с.

Arnaudov G. Terminologia medica polyglotta. Медицинская терминология на пяти языках. – София: Медицина и физкультура, 1979. – 943 с.

Butterworths Medical Dictionary – 2nd ed. – London – Boston – Sydney – Wellington – Durban – Toronto: Butterworth, 1979. – 1942 p.

Kondratiev D. Latin and Fundamentals of Medical Terminology for Medical Students / Д. К. Кондратьев, О. Е. Вылегжанина, Ю. В. Князева – Гродно: Гр. ГМУ, 2005. – 250 с.

Stadman's Medical Dictionary. – 25th ed. – Baltimore – Hong Kong – London – Sydney: Williams and Wilkins, 1989. – 1751 p.

CONTENTS

PREFACE.....	4
INTRODUCTION TO THE SUBJECT.....	4
Part I. PHONETIC RULES OF PRONUNCIATION	
Lesson 1. THE LATIN ALPHABET. THE PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS, CONSONANTS AND LETTER COMBINATIONS	
§ 1. Latin alphabet	9
§ 2. Division of Latin sounds.....	11
§ 3. Pronunciation of vowels.....	11
§ 4. Pronunciation of two vowel combination.....	12
§ 5. Pronunciation of consonants.....	13
§ 6. Pronunciation of consonant combinations	15
§ 7. Pronunciation of some letter combinations... ..	15
§ 8. Exercises	16
Lesson 2. ACCENT RULES	
§ 9. Accent in the words consisting of two syllables.	18
§10. Accent in polysyllabic words. Length and brevity of the second end syllable.....	18
§ 11. Long suffixes	19
§ 12. Short suffixes	20
§ 13. Suffixes with similar quality of vowel in all parts of medical terminology	20

§ 14. The way of accent determination when the second end vowel is not a part of a long or a short suffix.....	21
§ 15. Some rules of syllable length determination.....	21
§ 16. The rules of syllable brevity	22
§ 17. Exercises.....	23

Part II. ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY

Lesson 3. THE STRUCTURE OF LATIN ANATOMICAL TERMS. NOUN AND ITS GRAMMAR CATEGORIES

§ 18. The Latin terminology in Anatomy and its structure.....	25
§ 19. Grammar categories of noun	26
§ 20. Dictionary form of nouns	27
§ 21. The stem of the noun and the way to determine it.....	28
§ 22. Description of declensions.	28
§ 23. Exercises	30
§ 24. Vocabulary to lesson 3.....	31

Lesson 4

ADJECTIVES AND THEIR DICTIONARY FORM. ADJECTIVE AND NOUN AGREEMENT

§ 25. Introductory information about adjectives in Latin.....	34
§ 26. 1 st group of adjectives.....	35
§ 27. 2 nd group of adjectives.....	36
§ 28. Adjective and noun agreement.....	38
§ 29. Exercises.....	40
§ 30. Vocabulary to lesson 4.....	41

Lesson 5. DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

PECULIARITIES OF THE USE OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE DEGREES IN ANATOMICAL TERMS

§ 31. Introductory remarks to the topic	45
§ 32. The comparative degree.....	45
§ 33. Comparative forms in anatomical terminology	47

§ 34. The superlative degree	48
§ 35. Peculiarities of the use of the comparison degrees of the adjectives magnus, a, um and parvus, a, um in Latin anatomical terminology	49
§ 36. Exercises	52
§ 37. Vocabulary to lesson 5.....	53
Lesson 6	
THE MASCULINE GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS. NAMES OF MUSCLES PERFORMING DIFFERENT FUNCTIONS	
§ 38. Masculine names in the third declension from the point of view of their endings in the Nominative and the Geniti.....	56
§ 39. Some explanations to the exceptions presented in the table.....	57
§ 40. Latin names of muscles performing different functions.....	58
§ 41. Exercises	59
§ 42. Vocabulary to lesson 6.....	60
Lesson 7. FEMININE GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS	
§ 43. Systematization of the feminine names in the third declension.....	63
§ 44. Exercises.....	64
§ 45. Vocabulary to lesson 7.....	65
Lesson 8. NEUTRAL GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS	
§ 46. Systematization of the neutral names of the third declension.....	68
§ 47. Some explanations on the nouns having similar endings but different gender and declension.....	70
§ 48. Exercises	71
§ 49. Vocabulary to lesson 8.....	72
Lesson 9. NOMINATIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES	
§ 50. Nominative plural endings of nouns and adjectives	75
§ 51. Abbreviations of Nominative plural forms in anatomical terms.....	77
§ 52. Exercises.....	77
§ 53. Vocabulary to lesson 9.....	78

Lesson 10. GENITIVE PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES	
§ 54. Genitive plural endings of nouns and adjectives	81
§ 55. Exercises	83
§ 56. Vocabulary to lesson 10.....	84
Lesson 11. ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ACCUSATIVE	
§ 57. Accusative singular and plural endings.....	86
§ 58. Prepositions used with the Accusative.....	88
§ 59. Exercises	90
§ 60. Vocabulary to lesson 11.....	90
Lesson 12. ABLATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. PREPOSITIONS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE	
§ 61. Ablative and its formation	92
§ 62. Prepositions with the Ablative.....	94
§ 63. Exercises	95
§ 64. Vocabulary to lesson 12.....	96
Lesson 13. PREFIXES IN ANATOMICAL TERMINOLOGY	
§ 65. Prefixation in the word building.....	98
§ 66. Prefixes in anatomical terminology	98
§ 67. Greek and Latin numerals as prefixes.....	102
§ 68. Exercises.....	102
§ 69. Vocabulary to lesson 14.....	103
§ 70. Model (Pattern) of the final test in anatomical terminology.....	106
LATIN – ENGLISH VOCABULARY.	107
ENGLISH – LATIN VOCABULARY	116
Part III. PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY	
Lesson 14. INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PHARMACEUTICAL TERMINOLOGY	
§ 71. General information on Latin pharmaceutical terminology	124
§ 72. The drug form names	126

§ 73 Components of medical plants	127
§ 74. Medicinal plants in pharmaceutical terms.....	128
§ 75. The morphological structure of one-word Latin drug names	128
§ 76 Some rules of building multiword pharmaceutical terms	130
§ 77. Exercices	130
§ 78. Vocabulary to lesson 14..	131
Lesson 15. LATIN IN THE MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION. STANDARD	
VERB FORMS INDICATING ORDER AND INSTRUCTIONS IN MAKING UP	
THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION. GENERAL RULES OF MAKING UP	
THE LATIN PART OF PRESCRIPTION	
§ 79. Current use of Latin in medical prescription.....	133
§ 80. The Imperative verb forms used in a simple medical prescription.....	134
§ 81. The Conjunctive forms in medical prescription... ..	135
§ 82. The structure of a complex medical prescription.....	136
§ 83. Some peculiarities of quantity expression in the medical prescription	137
§ 84. Some important rules for making up the Latin part of medical prescription.	138
§ 85. Morphological roots of plant origin indicating alkaloids and glycosides with different pharmaceutical effects	138
§ 86. Exercises.....	139
§ 87. Vocabulary to lesson 15.....	140
Lesson 16. THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE OF SOME PHARMA-	
CEUTICAL FORMS IN THE FIRST LINE OF A MEDICAL PRESCRIPTION	
§ 88. General information on the use of the Accusative of the pharmaceutical forms in a medical prescription... ..	143
§ 89. The prescription of tablets in the Accusative form.....	144
§ 90. The prescription of drops in the Accusative form.....	145
§ 91. The prescription of ophthalmic films	146
§ 92. The prescription of medical sponges	146
§ 93. The prescription of suppositories in the Accusative case.....	147

§ 94. The prescription of aerosols in the Accusative case.....	148
§ 95. Morphological roots.....	149
§ 96. Exercises	150
§ 97. Vocabulary to lesson 16.	151
Lesson 17. LATIN NAMES OF CHEMICAL ELEMENTS, ACIDS, OXIDES, HYDROXIDES, PEROXIDES	
§ 98. Latin names of chemical elements	154
§ 99. Latin names of acids... ..	155
§ 100. Latin names of oxides, hydroxides, peroxides	157
§ 101. Morphological roots reflecting chemical information.....	158
§ 102. Exercises.....	159
§ 103. Vocabulary to lesson 17.....	161
Lesson 18. LATIN NAMES OF SALTS ON THE LABELS OF DRUG NAMES AND IN MEDICAL PRESCRIPTIONS	
§ 104. Latin names of salts, whose anions include oxygen.....	164
§ 105. Latin names of salts, whose anions do not contain oxygen.....	166
§ 106. Anion names of basic salts.....	166
§ 107. Two-component names of potassium and sodium salts.....	167
§ 108. Morphological roots reflecting pharmaceutical information.....	167
§ 109. Exercises.....	168
§ 110. Vocabulary to lesson 18.....	170
§ 111. Model (Pattern) of the final test in pharmaceutical terminology.....	173
LATIN – ENGLISH VOCABULARY	175
ENGLISH – LATIN VOCABULARY	179
Part IV. CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY	
Lesson 19. INTRODUCTION TO LATIN CLINICAL TERMINOLOGY. ONE-WORD TERMS AND THEIR MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE. INITIAL AND FINAL MORPHOLOGICAL ELEMENTS USED FOR WORD BUILDING. NAMES OF BRANCHES OF MEDICINE AND MEDICAL SPECIALISTS. NAMES OF MEDICAL EXAMINATIONS	

§ 112. General remarks on Latin clinical terminology	184
§ 113. The morphological structure of one-word clinical terms	185
§ 114. Some remarks on the word stressing in clinical names	187
§ 115. Initial and final root elements	187
§ 116. The names of the main branches of clinical medicine	188
§ 117. Names of medical specialists	189
§ 118. Some notes on the names of medical specialists in Latin and English	190
§ 119. The names of medical examinations and methods of treatment	191
§ 120. Table of initial root elements	192
§ 121. Table of final root elements	193
§ 122. Exercises	194
§ 123. Vocabulary to lesson 19.....	195
 Lesson 20. ONE-WORD NAMES OF FUNCTION DISORDERS, PATHOLOGICAL PROCESSES AND ABNORMAL CONDITIONS	
§ 124. One-word names of functional disorders.....	199
§ 125. One-word names of pathological processes and abnormal conditions	201
§ 126. Initial Greek roots and their Latin equivalents.....	203
§ 127. Table of final root elements	205
§ 128. Exercises	205
§ 129. Vocabulary to lesson 20....	207
 Lesson 21. NAMES OF QUALITATIVE AND QUANTITATIVE ABNORMALITIES IN MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURES AND PHYSIOLOGICAL PROCESSES	
§ 130. Increase and decrease in different quantitative conditions	212
§ 131. Increase or decrease in dimension of anatomical and histological structures.....	213
§ 132. Increase and decrease in the quantity of anatomical and histological structures.....	214

§ 133. Table of initial root elements	214
§ 134. Table of final roots.....	216
§ 135. Exercises	217
§ 136. Vocabulary to lesson 21.....	218
Lesson 22. NAMES OF INFLAMMATORY PROCESSES WHICH OCCUR IN ORGANS AND TISSUES. NAMES OF ABNORMALITIES IN THE STATES OF PHYSIOLOGICAL FLUIDS	
§ 137. Names of inflammatory conditions	223
§ 138. Names of morbid conditions of physiological fluids	225
§ 139. Table of initial roots	227
§ 140. Table of final roots	229
§ 141. Exercises	229
§ 142. Vocabulary to lesson 22.....	231
Lesson 23. ONE-WORD NAMES OF ENDOGENOUS PATHOLOGICAL CHANGES AND MALFORMATIONS.	
§ 143. Names of abnormal adhesions and fissures	237
§ 144. Names of pathological cavities	237
§ 145. Names of tumors	238
§ 146. Names of concrements	239
§ 147. Names of abnormal hardening and softening of the tissues	240
§ 148. Table of initial roots	241
§ 149. Table of final roots	242
§ 150. Exercises.....	243
§ 151. Vocabulary to lesson 23.....	244
Lesson 24. NAMES OF DEFORMATIONS OF TISSUE CAUSED BY EXOGENOUS FACTORS. NAMES OF SURGICAL OPERATIONS	
§ 152. General names of tissue deformations caused by different exogenous factors	249
§ 153. Names of surgical operations	251
§ 154. Prefixes widely used in surgical names	252

§ 155. Table of initial roots	253
§ 156. Table of final roots	254
§ 157. Exercises	255
§ 158. Vocabulary to lesson 24	257
Lesson 25. MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 1	
§ 159. The structure and vocabulary of multiword clinical terms	264
§ 160. Exercises.....	265
§ 161. Vocabulary to lesson 25	266
Lesson 26. MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 2	
§ 162. Exercises.....	270
§ 163. Vocabularies to lesson 26.	270
LESSON 27. MULTIWORD CLINICAL TERMS. PART № 3	
§ 164. Exercises	274
§ 165. Vocabulary to lesson 27	275
§ 166. Model (Pattern) of the final test in clinical terminology.....	277
LATIN – ENGLISH VOCABULARY	279
ENGLISH – LATIN VOCABULARY	294
The international students’ anthem “Gaudeamus”.....	317
Latin proverbs and quotations.....	319
Medical professional impressions.....	325
LITERATURE.....	330
CONTENTS.....	331

Учебное издание

Цисык Андрей Зиновьевич

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

ЛАТИНСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

Учебное пособие

Ответственный за выпуск: Круглик Н.А.

Редактор: Л.И.Жук

Компьютерный набор: Позняк З.В.

Подписано в печать _____ . Формат 60x84/16. Бумага писчая.

Усл.печ.л. _____. Уч.-изд.л. _____. Тираж _____ экз. Заказ _____.

Издатель и полиграфическое исполнение –

Белорусский государственный медицинский университет

220050, г.Минск, ул. Ленинградская, 6

